

K. Lily (N.) THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

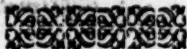
Wherein the words of *Lilie's* GRAMMAR
are (as much as might bee) reteined;
many errors thereof amended; many
needless things left out: many necessaries,
that were wanting, supplied; and all things
ordered in a Method more agreeable to
Children's Capacitie.

By *Charls Hoole*, Mr of Arts, of Lincoln-Col-
lege in Oxford, sometimes Schoolmaster of Rotherham in
York-shire; and now Teacher of a Private Grammar-
School in Gold-smith's Alley, not far from Alders-
gate and Cripple-gate, L O N D O N.

And (that nothing might bee wanting to the purpose)
the English Translation is set down on the contrarie
page for the benefit of Yong-learners.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammar is the Foundation of all Disciplines.



L O N D O N,

Printed by *William Du-Gard*; and are to bee sold by
John Clark jun. at the lower end of Cheap-side
entring into Mercers Chapel, *An. Dom. 1651.*

— 659 — 659 — 659 — 65 — 65 — 65 — 659 —

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA.

Grammatices Lilianæ verbis, (quantum fieri licuit,) retentis; multis ejus erroribus emendatis: minus-necessariis amputatis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; & omnibus Methodo faciliori ad tenellæ ætatis captum conformata, dispositis.

Operâ & Studio CAROLI HOOLE, A.M. & C.L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherhæmiensis in agro Ebor. jam verò privatæ Scholæ Grammaticæ Institutoris in Aurificum viculo, haud procul ab Alnorum & Clinicorum portis apud Londinates.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit) in juventutis gratiam, in adversa paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

FRANCA PATRI.
Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum



LONDINI,
Typis Guil. Du-Gard, veniuntq; apud Joannem Clark jun.
in Mercatorum Sacello, ad inferiorem partem
Vici Cheapſidani. Anno Dom. 1651.





To the Lovers and Professors of
Grammar-learning.

More especially

To his most honored good
friends, *the Schoolmasters of his ac-*
quaintance either in Citie or Countrie.

Gentlemen!

I Have lately published some Helps
towards Grounding little ones in the
Latine-tongue: and finding them
(by my own and other's Practice) to become
succesful; I more willingly go on to pro-
secute my begun design; viz. to contrive (at
vacant times) such necessarie Subsidiaries
for everie Classis in a Grammar-School,
as may much facilitate The good (though
with some tedious) old waie of Teaching
by Grammar, Autors, and Exercises.

And

The Epistle, &c.

And because our greatest cumber hitherto hath been Grammar, I have first begun with it, and endeavored to bring the Rules of that Art to the reach of Children's apprehensions; that in daily reading, writing, and speaking Latine, they may clearly see, and at once understand the Reason of what they do.

What I have don herein I most humbly submit to your candid judgments, and if, in your Opinions, I but seem to effect anie thing, which may make our School-labor less troublesome, I have what I desire, and therefore rest,

Your truly devoted
friend, and humble
servant

From my School
in Gold-smith's
Alley, March, 25.
1651.

Charles Hoole.

5 JY 62

M. FAB. Quintil. Instit. Orat. l. I. c. 4.



HÆC Professio——plus habet in re-
cessu quàm in fronte promittit——.
Quò minus sunt ferendi, qui banc
Artem ut tenuem ac jejunam ca-
villantur: quæ nisi Oratori futu-
ro fundamenta fideliter jecerit, quicquid super-
struxeris, corruet: & quæ vel sola omni studio-
rum genere plus habet operis, quàm ostentationis.
Nè quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Gram-
matices elementa; non quia magnæ sit operæ,
consonantes à vocalibus discernere, ipsasque eas
in semivocalium numerum, mutarumque parti-
ri: sed quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus,
apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo
acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam
quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam possit.

CICERO de Oratore lib. 3.

Pæcepta latinè loquendi puerilis doctrina tradit, & subtilior cognitio, ac ratio literarum alit; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani, ac domesticæ libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Oratorum & Poëtarum.

Desid. ERASMUS Rotterodamus.

PROCLIVUS est vel in triplici jure Doctoris no-
men, quam semel boni Grammatici titulum
promeruisse. B De

B

De

THE LATINE GRAMMAR.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine
Grammar con-
taineth Rules
of right Spea-
king Latine.

It hath four
Parts.



Grammar is the Art of Writing and Speaking aright.

With the Latines in Latine.

There bee four Parts of Gram- mar.	1	Orthographie.	Lib. I.
	2	Etymologie.	Lib. II.
	3	Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4	Profodia.	Lib. IV.

Grammar hath its name from *letters*, which the Greeks call *grammata*, and implic's as much as *literature*; as if you should call it the *Letter-Art*, or *Skill in letters*; for this Art begin's with *letters*, of which *syllables* are made; and of *syllables*, *words*; and of *words*, a *speech*; which is either *Prose* or *Vers*.

Orthographie is spent about *Letters*; *Profodia* about *Syllables*; *Etymologie* about *Words*; and *Syntaxis* about a *Speech*. The natural order therefore require's, that *Profodia* should bee ranked in the second place; But wee, following the method of the Common-Grammar (because indeed the quantitie of *Syllables* cannot so well bee perceived before *Words* bee understood) thought good to set *Profodia* in the last place.

Lib. I. Of Orthographie.

1. Orthogra-
phia

O Orthographie is the first part of Grammar, which teacheth with what letters anie word is to bee spelled; as, *lessio* not *lexio*.

teacheth

Orthographie teacheth	{	Of Letters.	Chap. 1.
		Of Syllables.	Chap. 2.
		Of Right Utterance.	Chap. 3.
		Of Points of Sentences.	Chap. 4.

GRAMMATICA LATINA.

De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.



Grammatica est recte Scribendi atque Loquendi Ars.

Latine Latinè.

Grammatica
Latina rectè
loquendi Latine
præcepta
continet.

Grammaticæ quatuor sunt partes.	1	Orthographia.	Lib. I.
	2	Etymologia.	Lib. II.
	3	Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4	Prosodia.	Lib. IV.

Ejus quatuor
sunt partes.

Nomen Grammaticæ impositum est à literis, quas grammata Greci vocant, sonantque idem quod *literatura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas: *literæ* enim sunt prima hujus Artis initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllabæ*; ex *syllabis*, *diçiones*; & à *diçionibus*, *sermo*; quæ *sermonis* origo est.

Orthographia versatur in *Literis*, *Prosodia* in *Syllabis*, *Etymologia* in *Diçionibus*, & *Syntaxis* in *Oratione*. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat, ut *Prosodia* in secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum Vulgaris Grammatices observantibus (quippe, *Syllabarum* quantitas ante *Vocum* intelligentiam non tam facile percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodia* locum assignare visum est.

Lib. I. De Orthographia.

O Orthographia est prima pars Grammatices, quæ docemur quibus quæque diçio sit formanda litteris, ut *lectio non lexio*.

De *Literis*.
De *Syllabis*.
De *Orthographia* autem agit.
De *Sententiarum punctis*.

Cap. I.
Cap. II. agit
Cap. III.
Cap. IV.
Cap.

Chap. I. of Letters.

of Letters,

A Letter is the least part of a Word.
There bee 23 Latine letters. A B C D E
F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.

which are

Three things
belong to e-
verie Letter.

1. The Name whereby it is called.
2. The Figure or Character where-
by it is known, or noted.
3. The Force or power whereby it
is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished } Vowels,
according to their } &c
found into } Consonants.

Vowels,

A *Vowel* is a letter which soundeth by its self; and
and they bee five, *a e i o u*, and *y* the Greek one:
of which, beeing diversly placed, are made as many
Diphthongs, *a au ei eu æ*, and *y*.

and

A *Consonant* is a letter which soundeth not except
it bee joined with a Vowel, as, *B C D &c*. Like-
wise *J* and *V* becom consonants, when they are
before themselves, or other vowels in the same syllable;
as, *Juno, Jovis; voluntas, vultus*.

Consonants

of Conso-
nants som
are

1. *Mutes*, which have no sound of
themselves, and they are nine, *b c d*
f g k p q r, in which the sound of
the vowel follow's after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek
letter, and *q* to make it sound takes
u to it.

2. *Semivowels*, which have som sound
of themselves, and they are seven, *l m*
n r s x z, in which the sound of
the vowel goeth before.

Semi-

Cap. 1. De Literis.

Litera est minima pars Dictionis.
Literæ Latinæ sunt viginti tres. A B C D E
F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.

1. De Literis

Tria accidunt unicuique literæ.

1. *Nomen*, quo appellatur.
2. *Figura*, quâ notatur.
3. *Potestas*, quâ pronunciatur.

Distinguuntur Literæ
secundum sonum in

Vocales,

&

Consonantes.

quæ sunt

Vocalis est litera quæ per se sonat; & sunt quin-
que, *a e i o u*, & *y* Græcorum: ex quibus variè di-
spositis totidem fiunt Diphthongi, *æ au ei eu œ*, & *y*.

Consonans est litera, quæ non nisi cum vocali jun-
cta sonat; ut B C D &c. Et etiam & V consonan-
tes fiunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem
syllabâ præponuntur; ut *Juno, Jovis; voluntas, vul-*
tus.

1. *Mutæ*, quæ sonum nullum à seipsis
habent, & sunt novem, *b c d f g h*
p q r, in quibus sonus vocalis sequi-
tur.

Consonan-
tium aliz
sunt

Nam *f* respondet *phi* Græcorum, &
q ut sonat semper adsciscit *u*.

2. *Semivocales*, quæ aliquid soni à se-
ipsis habent, & sunt septem, *l m n r*
s x z, in quibus sonus vocalis præce-
dit.

B 3

Semi-

The Latine Grammar.

Semivowels are some of them { **Liquids**, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same syllable; as, *l m n r*.
Double Consonants, which have the force of two letters, as *x z* and *j* between two vowels. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seem's to bee a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

S is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

H is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration; as in *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; which before *ie* is seldom pronounced, for wee saie *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they began with *J* consonant; but *Hierarchia*, as if it began with *I* vowel.

Small and Great.	Letters according to their shape are	{	Small	{	Small characters, as	
			or		written with	<i>a b c</i> .
			Great			Great characters, as <i>A B C</i> .

Great letters are written in the beginning of

1. Sentences; as, *Deum time, Fear God. Regem honora, Honor the King.*
2. Proper names; as, *Carolus* Charls. *Londinum* London. *Thamisis* the Thames.
3. The more eminent words in a sentence; as, *Religionis Christiana fundamentum est Fides.*
Faith is the foundation of the Christian Religion.
4. Everie vers in a Poëme; as,
Utendum est aetate: cito pede praterit aetas.
Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.
Improve the time; time passeth quickly on;
Nor doth so good succeed as that that's gon.

Small

Semivocalium
alix sunt

Liquida, quæ post Muram in eadem syllaba liquecunt, sive vim suam amittunt; ut *l m n r*.

Duplices, quæ duarum literarum vim habent; ut *x z & j* inter duas vocales. Nam in *jejunium*, primum *j* videtur esse consona simplex, secundum duplex, & tertium vocale.

S nec Liquida est, nec Muta, sed suæ potestatis, (sive pronuntiationis) litera; quam idcirco nonnulli *Monadicon* appellarunt.

H propriè quidem non est litera, sed aspirationis nota; ut *pulcher, homo, hiatu*; sed ante *i* e rarè pronuntiatur; dicere enim solemus *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, quasi ab *J* consona inciperet; sed *Hierarchia*, tanquam inciperet ab *i* vocali.

Literæ quo-
ad formam su-
am sunt

Minuscula, quæ minusculis characteribus scribuntur, ut *a b c*; Minuscula

Majuscula, quæ majusculis characteribus scribuntur, ut *A B C*. Majuscula

Majusculis inchoantur

1. Sententiæ; ut *Deum time. Regem honora.*
2. Propria nomina; ut, *Carolus, Londinum, Thamis.*
3. Dictiones quælibet in oratione notatu digniores; ut,
Religionis Christianæ fundamentum est Fides.
4. In Carminibus versus singuli; ut,
*Utendum est ætate: cito pede præterit ætas;
Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.*

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, whereof those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character, as *i* & *u* and *s*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants, which some call *ja* and *va*. Likewise long *f* is always written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *f* in the end of it; as *scripsimus*.

which stand
for

When great letters be set alone, or but a few together, they do signifie or stand for

A Word,

(Whole words; as, *M. T. C.* Mark Tullie Cicero. *S. P. D.* Salutem plurimam dicit, sendeth much greeting. *A. M.* Anno mundi, In the year of the World. *A. D.* Anno Domini, in the year of our Lord. *R. P.* Respublica, the Common-wealth. *P. C.* Patres Conscripti, the Senators. *H. S.* or *LLS.* *Dux librae & semis*, two pound and a half. *N. B.* nota bene, mark well.

sometimes

A Number.

A number; as, *I* one, *V* five, *X* ten, *L* fiftie, *C* an hundred, *CC* or *CC* two hundred. *DC* or *D* five hundred. *CC* or *C* or *M* a thousand. *DC* five thousand. *CCDC* ten thousand. *DCDC* fiftie thousand. *CCDCDC* an hundred thousand. *DCDCDC* five hundred thousand. *CCDCDCDC* ten hundred thousand.

The lesser number set before, take's away so much as it self is from the greater; but being set after, it add's to it; as, *IV* make's four, but *VI* six: *IX* nine, but *XI* eleven.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth it to signifie so manie thousands, as otherwise it would contain lesser sums; as *III* three thousand. *X* ten thousand, and so of the rest.

Chap. 2.

because it signifies M. a 100

In reliquis locis maxima ex parte Minusculæ scribuntur, è quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ duplicem obtinent characterem, ut *i* & *u* and *j* ; nam *i* & *u* vocales sunt ; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ ; quas aliqui *j* & *v* nominarunt. Longum etiam semper in principio, vel medio dictionis pingitur, sed *i* breve in fine ; ut, *scripsimus*.

Literæ majusculæ cum solæ aut paucæ scribuntur, quæ significant

Integra vocabula ; ut, *M. T. C. Marcus Tullius Cicero. S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit. A. M. Anno Mundi. A. D. Anno Domini. R. P. Respublica. P. C. Patres Conscripti. H. S. aut LL. S. Dua libra & semis. N. B. Nota bene.* Vocabulum aut

aliquando Numerum ; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X decem, L quinquaginta, C centum, S vel CC ducenti, D vel D quingenti, M vel CII quinquaginta millia. CCCII centena millia. ICCC quingenta millia. CCCC decies centena millia.* Numerum

Minor numerus præpositus tantundem demit majori sequenti ; postpositus verò tantundem addit : ut, *IV* valet quatuor, *VI* verò sex : *IX* valet novem, at *XI* undecim.

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, easdem tot millia continere innuit, quot alioqui minores numeros continerent, ut *III* tria millia, & decem millia, & sic de cæteris.

Chap. 1.

Chap. 2. of Syllables.

2. Of Syllables.

A Syllable, is a taking letters together, and uttering them with one breath; as, *vir-tus*.

And

And it is { *Improper*, which consisteth of one onely vowel or diphthong; as, *Æ-a-cus*.
Proper, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong; as, *cœlestis*.

Of parting and putting them together.

Hee that would write rightly must learn, as hee write's, to part syllables, and put them together.

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters; as, *Stirps*, *Scrobs*.
2. In words of manie syllables a consonant set between two vowels belong's to the later; as *Do-mi-nus*.
3. If a consonant bee doubled, the first belong's to the foregoing, and the latter to the following syllable; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants, which cannot bee joined in the beginning of a word, must bee parted in the middle of it; as, *Sul-cus*: and on the contrarie; as, *No-ster*.
5. In simple words these letters alway belong to the following vowel, viz.

bd	as	He-bdomas.	becauf wec saie	Bdellium.
cn		Te-chna.		Cneus.
st		Do-ctus.		Ctesipho.
gn		A-gnus.		Gnatus.
mn		A-mnis.		Mnemosyne.
phth		Na-phtha.		Phthifis.
ps		Scri-psi.		Psittacus.
pt		A-ptus.		Ptolomæus.

Cap. 2. De Syllabis.

Syllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu De Syllabis:
 prolatâ ; ut, *vir-tus*.

Estque

Impropria, quæ constat ex solâ vocali
 vel diphthongo ; ut, *Æ-a-cus*.
Propria, quæ constat ex consonante
 unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel
 diphthongo comprehensis ; ut, *Cæ-*
lestis.

Rectè scripturâ discendum est syllabas, inter scri-
 bendum, aptè distinguere, atque connectere.

eamdem di-
 stinctionem, vel
 connexionem.

Notandum igitur quod

1. Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium literarum non excedat ; ut, *Stirps*, *Scrobs*.
2. In Polyssyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertineat ; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. Si consonans geminetur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet ; ut, *An-nus*.
4. Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ ; ut, *Sul-cus* ;
 Et è contrâ ; ut, *No-ster*.
5. In simplicibus vocibus hæ literæ vocali sequenti semper adhærent, viz.

bd	ut	He-bdomas.	quâ dicitur	Bdellium.
cn		Te-chna.		Cneus.
et		Do-ctus.		Ctesipho.
gn		A-gnus.		Gnatus.
mn		A-mnis.		Mnemosyne.
phth		Na-phtha.		Phthisis.
ps		Scri-psi.		Psitacus.
pt		A-ptus.		Ptolomæus.

sed ut

sb	as	Le-sbia.	becaus wee saie	Sbesis.
sc		Pi-scis.		Scamnum.
sm		Co-smus.		Smaragdus.
sp		A-sper.		Spero.
sq		Te-squa.		Squalor.
st		Pa-stor.		Sterto.
tl		A-tlas.		Tleptolemus.
tm		La-tmius.		Tmolus.
tn		Æ-tna.		Thnesko.

6. In words compounded everie part must bee separated from another ; as, *Abf-con-do*.
7. In words compounded with a preposition, wee must respect the ear and good sound ; as, *Aufero*, not *Absfero* ; and *Abstuli*, not *Autuli* : and therefore it is that consonants are oftentimes put in ; as, *Redamo*, for *Reamo* ; and *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
8. *S* Is rightly written after *X* in compound words, whose simples begin with *s* ; as, *Exscribo*, of *ex* and *scribo*, *exsul* of *x* and *solum* : but not in others ; as, *Exaro* of *Ex* and *oro* ; *Exigo* of *ex* and *ago*.

Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

Of right Utterance and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

O *Rthœpie*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right speaking our ; as, *Homo*, not *o no*.

Boies must neither over-hasten their speech, nor pause between everie word, but must bee made to avoid the usual faults in pronouncing ; such as are

1. *Traulism*, when one stuteth or stammereth ; as, *Cacacanit* for *canit*. Which fault may bee amended by quickly pattering over som ribble rabble made hard to pronouuce on purpose ; as,

Arx, tridens, rostris, sphinx, praster, torrida, seps, strix.
Pla-

sb		Le-sbia.		Sbesis.
sc		Pi-scis.		Scamnum.
sm		Co-smus.		Smaragdus.
sp		A-sper.		Spero.
sq	as	Te-squa.	quia dicitur	Squalor.
st		Pa-stor.		Sterto.
tl		A-tlas		Tieptolemus.
tm		La-tinius.		Tmolus.
tn		E-tna.		Thnesko.

6. In compositis quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est ; ut *Abs-con-do*.

7. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Euphonia* servendum est ; ut, *Aufero*, non *abssero*, & *abstuli*, non *autuli* : ideoque Consonantes non raro interferuntur ; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.

8. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S*, rectissime scribitur *s* ; ut, *Exscribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo* ; *exsul*, ab *ex* & *solum* ; sed non in aliis ; ut *exoro*, ab *ex* & *oro* ; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.

Cap. 3. De Orthoëpia.

OOrthoëpia est rectè Enuntiandi ratio ; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitio sermonis & mendacis.

Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas quasque voces censilescant. Deterrendi sunt autem à vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cujusmodi sunt

1. *Traulissimus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris ; ut, *Cacacanit* pro *canit*. Cui vitio facilè succurritur, si centones quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissime volvant ; ut,

Arx, *tridens*, *rostris*, *sphinx*, *præster*, *torrida*, *seps*, *strix*.

Pla-

Plateasm, when one speaketh too broadly ; as, *Argo* for *Ergo*. *Mountes* for *Montes*. *Taibai* for *tibi*.

Ischnotes, when one speaketh too mincingly ; as, *Nync* for *nunc*. *Eliquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly ; as, *Aputh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *Amat*.

Chap. 4. Of Points in Sentences.

4. Of Points in Sentences,

which are

1. Comma ;

2. Colon ;

3. Semicolon ;

4. Period ;

5. Parenthesis ;

6. Interrogation ;

7. Exclamation ;

A Point or Pauf is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may staie his breath. There bee eight of these especially to bee noted.

1. A *Comma* is an half circle, which staierh a sentence a little by distinguishing its shorter parts ; as, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Graculus esuriens, in caelum, iusseris, ibit*.

2. A *Colon* is two prickts, which suspend a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst ; as, *Utendum est etate : cito pede praterit etas*.

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it, staying a sentence longer then a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon* ; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras ; quid virtus, non item*.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence ; as, *Deum time. Regem honora*.

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which though it bee taken away, the speech nevertheless will bee whole ; as,

Principes (quia bella minantur Hostes) militibus urbes pramunit, & armis.

6. An *Interrogation* mark's a question with two prickts, whereof the higher hath a tail upward ; as, *Quomodo vales ?*

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two prickts, whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point ; as, *O tempora ! O mores !*

Hy-

2. *Plateasmus*, est iusto crassior pronuntiatio ; ut *Argo* pro *Ergo*. *Mountes* pro *Montes*. *Taibai* pro *tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, est iusto exilior pronuntiatio ; ut, *Nync* pro *Nunc*. *Eliquis* pro *Aliquis*. Aut *blæfior* ; ut, *Aputh* pro *Apud*. *Amath* pro *Amar*.

Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

PUNCTUM five Pausa est nota distinctionis, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipuè notanda.

4. De sententiarum punctis, quæ sunt,

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas distinguendo ; ut, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Græculus esuriens, in cælum, jussus, ibit.*

1. Comma

2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo ; ut, *Utendum est atate : cito pede præterit atas.*

2. Colon

3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commate subiecto, sententiam diutius paulò sustinens quàm *Comma* ; minùs diu verò quàm *Colon* ; ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras ; quid virtus, non item.*

3. Semicolon

4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam ; ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

4. Periodus

5. *Parenthesis* sunt quæ semilunulæ sententiam includentes, quâ remota sermo tamen manet integer ; ut,

5. Parenthesis

Princeps (quia bella minantur Hostes) militibus urbes præmunit, & armis.

6. *Interrogatio* signat quæstionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum ; ut, *Quomodo vales ?*

6. Interrogatio

7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est lineola in punctum descendens ; ut, *O tempora ! O mores !*

Exclamatio

Hy-

Hyphen -

8. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line ; as, *Humanif-
simè* or, in words that are united, but not compound-
ed ; as *Res-publica*, a Common-wealth.



LIB. II.

Of Etymologie.

Etymologie

teacheth



ETYMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to everie one of them.

Now, a word is a part or piece of a Speech, which it self doth signifie something, but cannot bee divided into parts that signifie ; as, *Pietas* Godliness.

Chap. I.

Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

Of the eight Parts of Speech.

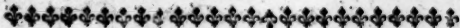
which are

THERE bee eight sorts of Words.

- | | | |
|---|------------------|-----------|
| { | 1. A Noun. | Chap. 2. |
| | 2. A Pronoun. | Chap. 23. |
| | 3. A Verb. | Chap. 34. |
| | 4. A Participle. | Chap. 39. |

An

8. *Hyphen* est lineola interposita voci 8. *Hyphen* disiecta in fine lineæ; ut, *Humanissime*: aut in vocibus unitis, sed non compositis; ut, *Res-publica*.



LIB. II.

De Etymologia.



ETIMOLOGIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ docet dictionum discrimina, singularum proprietates, five Accidentia diligenter expendens. Etymologia agit

Est autem dictio five vox, pars orationis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes significantes dividi non potest; ut, *Fi-e-tas*.

Cap. I.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum Accidentibus generalibus.

OCTO sunt vocum genera.

- 1. *Nomen.*
- 2. *Pronomen.*
- 3. *Verbum.*
- 4. *Participium.*

C

De octo Partibus Orationis, quæ sunt

Cap. 2.

Cap. 23.

Cap. 24.

Cap. 39.

Ad

The Latine Grammar.

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|-----------|
| } | 5. <i>An Adverb.</i> | Chap. 40. |
| | 6. <i>A Conjunction.</i> | Chap. 41. |
| | 7. <i>A Preposition.</i> | Chap. 42. |
| | 8. <i>An Interjection.</i> | Chap. 43. |

And these bee commonly called *Parts of Speech*, becauf of them everie speech is made.

Declined or Undeclined.	}	The four	first	}	of these are	}	Declined, which change's their endings.
			later				Undeclined, wch change's not their endings.

There belong to everie Part of Speech

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. Species, or Kinde, | } | according to which a word is | } | Primitive, which is not derived of anie other word; as, <i>Arbor</i> , <i>Amo</i> . |
| | | | | Derivative, which is derived from another word; as, <i>Arbustum</i> , <i>Amicus</i> . |
| 2. Figure, or Form, | } | according to which a word is | } | Simple, or single; as, <i>Amicus</i> , <i>Amo</i> . |
| | | | | Compound, or mixt; as, <i>Inimicus</i> , <i>Redamo</i> . |

There belong to words *Declined*

To which belong,

1. *Analogie*, when a word agree's with a Common Rule; as, *Musa*, *Amo*.
2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerv's from the Common Rule; as, *Filla*, *Fero*.

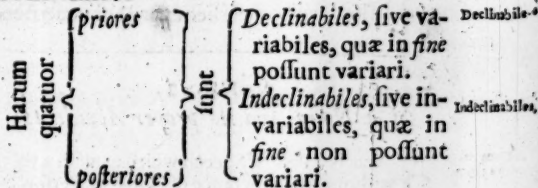
- | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| 3. Two Numbers, whereof | } | The <i>Singular</i> speaketh but of one; as, <i>Lapis</i> a Stone. |
| | | The <i>Plural</i> of more then one; as, <i>Lapides</i> Stones. |

4. Three

Two Numbers, Singular and Plural.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------|----------|
| } | 5. <i>Adverbium.</i> | Cap. 40. |
| | 6. <i>Conjunctio.</i> | Cap. 41. |
| | 7. <i>Præpositio.</i> | Cap. 42. |
| | 8. <i>Interjectio.</i> | Cap. 43. |

Atque hæ vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quòd ex hisce omnis oratio conficiatur.



Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|---|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. <i>Species,</i> | { | secundum
quam vox
dicitur | { | Primitiva, quæ aliunde non trahitur; ut, <i>Arbor, Amo.</i> |
| | | | | Derivativa, quæ aliunde formatur; ut, <i>Arbustum, Amicus.</i> |
| 2. <i>Figura,</i> | { | { | { | Simplex, ut, <i>Amicus, Amo.</i> |
| | | | | Composita, ut, <i>Inimicus, Redam.</i> |

Quibus accidunt,

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

1. *Analogia*, cum dictio convenit Communi Regulæ, ut, *Musa, Amo.*
2. *Anomalia*, cum dictio recedit à Communi Regulæ, ut, *Filia, Fero.*
3. *Numeri*

duo quorum.	{	Singularis	}	loquitur	{	de uno, ut, <i>Lapis.</i>
		Pluralis				de pluribus; ut, <i>Lapides.</i>

Numeri duo
Singularis &
Pluralis.

Three Persons

The First.

The Second.

The Third.

4. Three Persons. { The first speaketh of himself; as, *Ego nugans puer ludo*. I trifling boie do plaie.
 The second is spoken to; as, *Tu nugans puer ludis*. Thou trifling boie plaist.
 The third is spoken of; as, *Ille nugans puer ludit*. Hee trifling boie plaieeth.

Ego and *Nos* bee alwaies of the First Person.

Tu and *vos*, and everie Vocative case of the Second.

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles bee of the Third, unless these bee exprest or understood.

Chap. 2.

Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun nameth a thing.

and is

Substantive

Or

Adjective.

A Noun is a Part of Speech which nameth a thing, without anie difference of Time or Person; as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

And it is either

Substantive, which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to bee added to declare its signification; as, *Homo* a Man.

Adjective, which stand's in need of a Substantive, to declare its signification; as, *Bonus* good.

A substantive sheweth what a thing is; as, *Equus* a horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the thing is; as, *Albus* White.

Both which are

Proper

Or

Common.

Proper, which is spoken of som one thing only; as, *Carolus* Charls, *Londinum* London. *Thamisis* Thames. *Anglus* English. *Scotus* Scotch.

Common, which signifieth a thing common to many

4. Personæ
tres,

Prima, quæ loquitur de se; ut, *Ego* Personæ tres.
Prima.
nugans puer ludo.
Secunda, ad quam loquimur; ut, *Tu* Secunda.
nugans puer ludis.
Tertia, de quâ loquimur; ut *Ille* nu- Tertia.
gans puer ludit.

- *Ego* & *Nos* sunt semper Primæ personæ.
- *Tu* & *Vos*, & omnes Vocativi Secundæ.
- Cætera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt Tertiarum personarum, nisi ista exprimantur vel subintelligantur.

Cap. 2.

De Nomine, & ejus Accidentibus specialibus.

Nomen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat sine Nomen rem nominat.
Nulla Temporis aut Personæ differentiâ; ut, *Ma-*
nus, Domus.

Estque

Substantivum, quod per se in Oratione subsistit, & Substantivum
nihil addi postulat ad suam significationem ex- Vel
primendam; ut, *Homo.*

Adjectivum quod Substantivo indiget ad suam si- Adjectivum
gnificationem exprimendam; ut *Bonus.*

Substantivum indicat quid sit; ut, *Equus.*

Adjectivum indicat quale sit; ut, *Albus.*

Quorum utrumque est

Proprium, quod rem uni individuo propriam signi- Proprium
ficat; ut, *Carolus, Londinum, Thamisis, Anglus, Sco-*
tus. Vel

Comune, sive Appellativum, quod rem multis Com-
Commune.

1 manie; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a Citie, *Flavius*
 a River, *Regio* a Countrie, *Magnus* Great.

There belong to a $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Case.} \\ \text{Noun, Pronoun, and} \\ \text{a Participle} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Gender.} \\ \text{Declension.} \\ \text{Comparison.} \end{array} \right.$

Chap. 3.
 Chap. 4.
 Chap. 11.
 Chap. 17.

It hath,

Chap. 3. of Case.

A Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

Six Cases.

There bee Six cases in both numbers.

The Nominative.

1. The *Nominative* case is the first word whereby wee name anie thing; and it goeth before the Verb, and answereth to the question *Who*, or *What*? as, *Magister docet*, The Master teacheth.

Genitive.

2. The *Genitive* case signifie's whose a thing is; and answereth to this question *Whose*, or *Whereof*? as, *Doctrina Magistri*, The learning of the Master, or The Master's learning.

Dative.

3. The *Dative* attribute's, or give's somthing to one; and answereth to the question *to whom*, or *to what*; as, *Do librum Magistro*, I give a book to the Master.

Accusative.

4. The *Accusative* case follow's the Verb, and signifie's whereunto the action of the Verb referreth; and answereth to the question *Whom*, or *What*? as, *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative.

5. The *Vocative* case is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *Ablative* case is commonly joined with a Preposition that serveth thereunto; and answereth to the question *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accepi librum a Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative* case is sometimes called the *right*, or *straight case*, and the rest *oblique*, or *thwart cases*, becaus their endings swerv from the *Nominative*.

Chap.

communem significat; ut, *Homo, Urbs, Fluvius, Regio, Magnus.*

Accidunt *Nomini, Pronomini, & Participio,* { *Casus. Genus. Declinatio. Comparatio.*

Cap. 3.
Cap. 4. *Ejus sunt*
Cap. 11.
Cap. 17.

Cap. 3. De Casu.

Casu est specialis Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem *Sex casus* in utroque numero.

1. *Nominativus* est prima vox, quâ rem aliquam nominamus: præcedit autem Verbum, & respondet quæstioni *Quis, aut Quid?* ut, *Magister docet.* Nominativus.
2. *Genitivus* significat cuius sit res quæpiam, & respondet quæstioni *Cujus?* ut, *Doctrina Magistri.* Genitivus.
3. *Dativus* quid cuiquam attribuit, & respondet quæstioni *Cui?* ut, *Do librum Magistro.* Dativus.
4. *Accusativus* sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediatè transit, & respondet quæstioni, *Quem, vel Quid?* ut, *Amo Magistrum.* Accusativus.
5. *Vocativus* vocandis compellandisve personis accommodatur; ut, *O Magister.* Vocativus.
6. *Ablativus* conjungitur ferè Præpositioni Ablativo inservienti; & respondet quæstioni *à quo;* ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro.* Ablativus.

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus casus* dicitur: cæteri verò *Obliqui*, quod eorum terminationes flectunt à *Nominativo*.

Chap. 4. Of Gender.

Gender is the differencing of Sex in respect of Speech. For it make's a difference betwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, thereby to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective.

even genders Genders of Nouns bee seven; whereof the three first may not unfitly bee termed Simple, and the four last Compound Genders.

They are known by their Articles (or notes) which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and bee thus declined.

Singulariter		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		Nom.	<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>		Gen.	<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Eorum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Hui</i>	<i>Hui</i>	<i>Hui</i>		Dat.	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		Acc.	<i>Hos</i>	<i>Has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.					Voc.			
	Abl.	<i>Hôc</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hôc</i>		Abl.	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

Masculine.

1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees*; and is declined with *Hic*; as, *Hic vir*, a Man.

Feminine.

2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees*; and is declined with *Hæc*; as, *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter.

3. The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc*; as, *Hoc saxum*, a Stone.

4. *Com.*

Cap. 4. De Genere.

Genus est Sexus discretio ratione sermonis. Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam mares aut fœminæ construuntur, propter convenientiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima Genera septem non ineptè Simplicia, quatuor verò postrema Composita dici queant.

Dignoscuntur autem suis Articulis (five notis) qui à Pronominibus accipiuntur, & in hunc modum variantur.

Singulariter		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Horum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huic</i>	<i>Huic</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hos</i>	<i>Has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Abl.	<i>Hoc</i>	<i>Hac</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

1. *Masculinum* genus maribus attribuitur; cuius Masculinum nota est *Hic*; ut *Hic vir*.

2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; cuius nota est Fœmininum *Hæc*; ut, *Hæc mulier*.

3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; Neutrum cuius nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*.

Common of
two.

4. The *Common of two* is made of the Masculine and the Feminine joined together; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc*; as *Hic & hæc Parens* a Parent.

Common of
three.

5. The *Common of three* is made of all three simple Genders joined together; and is declined with *Hic*, *Hæc*, and *Hoc*; as, *Hic, Hæc & Hoc Felix* Happie.

Doubtful.

6. The *Doubtful* may bee either the Masculine or the Feminine; and is declined with *Hic vel Hæc*; as, *Hic vel Hæc Dies* a Daie.

Epicene.

7. The *Epicene* comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article; as, *Hic Passer* a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguitie, wee use to express the Sex by *Hæc*, or *Shee*; as, *Passer mas* a Hæc, or Cock-sparrow; *Passer femina* a Shee, or Hen-sparrow.



Propria quæ Maribus.

OR

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules OF THE GENDERS of NOUNS.

Chap. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names.

Rules of the
genders of
Nouns are

1. General.
2. Of Substan-
tives proper.
3. Proper
names.

1. Of Gods.
2. Of Men.
3. Of Rivers.
4. Of Months.
5. Of Winds.
are of the Mis-
callies. Gods.

I. **P**ROPER Names which are given to Males, or Hees, are Masculine: As 1. of Gods, as *Bacchus, chi. Mars, tis. Apollo, linis.* 2. Of Men, as *Cato, tōnis. Virgilius, lii.* 3. Of Rivers, as *Tybris, bris. Orontes, tis.* 4. Of Months, as *October, bris.* 5. Of Windes, as *Lybs, ybis. Notus, ti. Austro, stri,* the South-winde. II. Pro-

4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino componitur; cuius nota est *Hic & Hæc*; ut, *Hic & Hæc Parens*. Commune duorum.

5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generibus componitur; cuius nota est *Hic, Hæc & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hæc, & Hoc, Felix*. Commune trium.

6. *Dubium* aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Articulum indifferenter assumere potest; cuius nota est *Hic vel Hæc*; ut, *Hic vel Hæc Dies*. Dubium.

Epicœnum sub uno Articulo utrunque sexum complectitur; ut, *Hic passer*. Hoc autem in genere, ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus per marem & feminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer femina*. Epicœnum.



Propria quæ Maribus:

VEL,

GUILIELMI LILII Regulæ

DE

GENERIBUS NOMINUM.

CAP. 5. De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.

I. **P**ropria, quæ maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas;
Ut sunt 1. Divorum, *Mars, Bacchus, Apollo*. 2. Viro-
rum, *Ut, Cato, Virgilius*. 3. Fluviorum; ut, *Tibris, Orontes*. (rum,
4. Mensium; ut, *October*. 5. Ventorum; ut, *Lybs, Notus, Au-*

(ster.

Propria

Regulæ de ge-
neribus nomi-
num.

1. Generales.
1. Substantivo-
rum Proprio-
rum.

1. Propria
1. Deorum,
2. Virorum,
3. Fluviorum,
4. Mensium,
5. Ventorum
mascula
sunt.

II. Proper Names,
1. Of Goddesses.
2. Of Women.
3. Of Cities.
4. Of Regions.
5. Of Islands.
see Feminines.

II. Proper Names shewing the female kind: are Feminines; as, 1. Of Goddesses, as *Juno, nonis. Venus, neris.* 2. Of Women, as *Anna, na. Philotis, lotidis.* 3. Of Cities, as *Elis, lidis. Opus, puntis.* 4. Of Regions, as *Gracia, a. Persis, idis.* 5. Of Islands, as *Creta, ta. Britannia, na. Cyprus, pri.*

But some names of Cities are excepted, as 1. These Masculines, *Sulmo, monis. Agragus, gantis.* 2. Some Neuters, as *Argos, Tibur, buris. Praeneste, stis,* and 3. *Anxur, xuris*, which is both of the Masculine and Neuter gender.

Chap. 6.

Of the General Rules of Common Names.

II. General of Common Names.
1. Common names of Trees are Feminines.

I. Common names of Trees are of the Feminine gender, as *Alnus, ni, an Alder. Cupressus, si, a Cypress. Cedrus, dri, a Cedar.* But *Pinus, ni, a Pine. Oleaster, stri, a wild Olive,* are Masculines. *Siler, leris, an Oler. Suber, beris, a Cork tree. Thus, uris, the frankincense tree. Robur, oris, an Oak,* and *Acer, ceris, a Maple,* are Neuters.

2. Common names of Birds, Beasts, & Fish are Epicenes.

II. The names of Birds, as *Passer, eris, a Sparrow. Hirundo, dris, a Swallow.* Of Beasts, as *Tigris, gridis, a Tiger. Vulpes, pis, a Fox.* And of Fishes, as *Ostrea, a, an Oyster. Cetus, ti, a Whale,* are of the Epicene gender.

3. All that end in *us*, and that change not their ending, are Neuters.

III. But here is to be noted, that of all the Nouns afore-mentioned, every Noun (except proper names of Men, and Women) in *um* is of the Neuter gender. And so are Nouns that change not their ending.

But

- P**ROPRIA fœmineum referentia nomina sexum,
 Fœmineo generi tribuuntur : sive 1. Dearum
 Sunt; ut, *Juno, Venus* : 2. Mulierum ; seu, *Anna, Philotis*.
 3. Urbium; ut *Elis, Opus*. 4. Regionum ; ut, *Græcia, Persis*.
 5. Insulæ item nomen ; ceu, *Creta, Britannia, Cyprus*.

2. Propria
 1. Dearum,
 3. Mulierum,
 3. Urbium
 4. Regionum,
 5. Insularum
 Fœminas
 sunt,

Excipienda tamen quædam sunt Urbium ; ut, ista
 1. Mascula, *Sulmo, Agragor* : 2. quædam neutralia; ut *Argos*
Tybur, Præneste : & genus *Anxur* quod dat utrumque.

Cap. 6.

De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

- I. **A**PPELLATIVA arborum erunt muliebria ; ut, *alnus,*
Cupressus, cedrus. Mas pinus, mas oleaster :
Et sunt neutra, filer, suber, thus, robur, acérque

II. Generalis
 Appellative-
 tum.

- II. **S**UNT etiam volucrum; ceu, *passer, hirundo* : ferarum,
Sul, Tygris, Vulpes : & piscium ; ut *ostrea, cetus,*
Diæta Episcœna : quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.

2. Appellativum
 Arborum sunt
 fœminas.
 3. Appellativum
 volucrum, fe-
 rarum, & pisci-
 um Episcœna
 sunt.
 3. Omne be-
 ste, & inveni-
 abile fag.

- III. Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus antè, notandum,
 2. Omne quod exit in um, (si hominum modo Propria tollas)
 3. Esse genus neutrum: sit invariabile nomen,

Sed

2. Special rules
of common
names are
three.

But now will I speake in order touching all other Common Names, or which are as Common-names; for in these the Gender is alwaies known by the Genitive case: as the Three Special Rules following will shew.

Chap. 7.

Of the First special Rule.

1.
A Noun not
encreasing, is
Feminine.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case singular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro*, *Carnis*, *Flesh*. *Capra*, *Caprae*, *a shee Goat*. *Nubes*, *Nubis*, *a Cloud*.

Except Masculine.

I. **M**asculine Names belonging to Men, ending in *a*, are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba*, *bae*, *a Scribe*. *Assecla*, *clae*, *a Page*. *Scurrara*, *a Scoffer*. *Rabula*, *lae*, *a Fowler*. *Lixa*, *ae*, *a Scullion*. *Lanista*, *tae*, *a fencer*. 2. Such as come from the first Greek Declension and end in *as*; as *Satrapas*, *pa*, *a Peer*. Or in *es*; as *Athletes*, *tae*, *a Wrestler*. And such as are made of them in *a*; as *Satrapa*, *pa*, *Athleta*, *tae*. 3. Likewise *verres*, *ris*, *a boar-pig*. *Natalis*, *lis*, *a birth-date*. *aqualis*, *lis*, *an ewer*. 4. Words that are compounded of *as* (and signifie more then *as*) *a pound weight*; as *centussis*, *sis*, *a hundred pound weight*. 5. Add to these, *Lienis*, *nis*, *the mill*. *orbis*, *bis*, *a roundle*. *callis*, *lis*, *a path*. *caulis*, *lis*, *a stalk*. *follis*, *lis*, *a pair of bellows*. *collis*, *lis*, *a little hill*. *mensis*, *sis*, *a month*. *ensis*, *sis*, *a sword*. *fustis*, *sis*, *a club*. *funis*, *nis*, *a rope*. *panis*, *nis*, *bread*. *penis*, *nis*, *a man's yard*. *crinis*, *nis*, *hair*. *ignis*, *nis*, *fire*. *cassis*, *sis*, *a net*. *fascis*, *scis*, *a faggot*. *torris*, *ris*, *a firebrand*. *sentis*, *tis*, *a thorn*. *piscis*, *scis*, *a fish*. *unguis*, *guis*, *a nail*, or *hoof*. *vermis*, *mis*, *a worm*. *velis*, *lis*, *a doo-bay*. *postis*, *sis*, *a post*.

Grammatica Latina.

31

*Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur,
Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa, ordine dicam:
Nam genus his semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo:
Infra ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.*

Regule speciales Appellativorum sunt tres.

Cap. 3.

De primâ Regulâ Speciali, & ejus Exceptionibus.

Nomen non crescens genitivo, ceu caro, carnis;
Capra, capræ; nubes, nubis; genus est muliebre.

I.
Nomen non crescens, est Muliebre.

I. **M**ascula nomina in a dicuntur multa virorum;
Ut, Scriba, assecla, Icurra, rabula, lixa, lanista.
2. Mascula Græcorum quot declinatio prima
Fundit in as & in es, & ab illis quot per a sunt;
Ut, Satrapas, Satrapa; Athletes, Athleta. 3. Leguntur
Mascula item verres, natalis, aqualis. 4. Ab asse
Nata; ut, centussis. 5. Conjunge lienis, & orbis,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, & ensis,
Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, & unguis,
Et vermis, vectis, postis, societur & axis.

Excipiuntur Masculina.

6. Mas.

post, and axis, *xis*, an axle tree. 6. Nouns ending

in { *er*, } as, { *Venter*, *tris*, a belly; } are of the
 { *os*, } { *Logis*, *gi*, a word; } Masculine
 { *us*, } { *Annus*, *ni*, a year; } gender.

Y Et these are Feminines. 1. *Mater*, *tris*, a mother. 2. *Humus*, *mi*, the ground: *domus*, *mi*, *mūs*, an house, or home: *Alvus*, *vi*, a panch: *colus*, *li*, *lūs*, a distaff: *ficus*, *ci*, *cūs*, a fig: *acus*, *cūs*, a needle: *porticus*, *cūs*, a gallerie: *tribus*, *būs*, a tribe: *socrus*, *cri*, a mother in law: *nurus*, *rūs*, a daughter in law: *manus*, *nūs*, a hand: *idus iduum*, the Ides of the month: *anus*, *nūs*, an old woman: *vannus* *ni*, a van. 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn *os* into *us*, as *papyrus*, *ri*, paper: *antidotus*, *ti*, an antidote: *costus*, *sti*, the herb *Marie*: *diphthongus*, *gi*, a diphthong: *byssus*, *si*, fine flax: *abyssus*, *si*, an abyss: *crystallus*, *li*, crystal: *Synodus*, *di*, a Synod: *sapphirus*, *ri*, a Sapphire: *eremus*, *mi*, a wilderness: *arctus*, *ti*, *Charis* = *swain*: with manie more, which would bee long to set down.

II. Nouns ending in *e*, whose Genitive make's *is*, are of the Neuter gender; as, *Mare*, *ris*, the sea: *rete*, *tis*, a net. And 2. Nouns that end in *on*; as *barbiton*, *ti*, a Lute: or in *um*; as *ovum*, *vi*, an egg. 3. *Hippomenes*, *nis*, *Marie*-poison: *cacoëthes*, *this*, an evil custom: *virus*, poison: *pelagus*, *gi*, the sea. But 4. *Vulgus*, *gi*, the common people, is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter.

III. These Nouns are of the Doubtful gender; *Talpa*, *pa*, a mole: *dama*, *ma*, a fallow-deer: *canalis*, *lis*, a channel: *Balanus*, *ni*, mast: *finis*, *nis*, an end: *clunis*, *nis*, a buttock: *restis*, *stis*, a rope: *penus*, *ni*, *nūs*, *tidulus*: *amnis*, *nis*, a river. pari-

6. *Mascula in er, ceu venter; in os, vel us, ut logos, (annus.*

Feminei generis sunt 1. mater, 2. humus, domus, alvus,
Et colus, & quarta pro fructu ficus, aculeque

Porticus, atque tribus, socrus, nurus & manus, idus;
Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

3. His jungas os in us vertentia Græca, Papyrus,
Antidotus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
CrySTALLUS, Synodus, saphirus, eremus, & arctus,
Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

II. **N**eutrum nomen in e, si gignit is; ut, mare, rete. Neutra
2. Et quot in on vel in um fiunt; ut, barbiton,
ovum.

Est neutrum hyppomanes genus, & neutrum cacoë- (thes,
Et virus, pelagus. 4. Neutrum modis modò vulgus.

III. **I**ncerti generis sunt talpa, & dama, canalis, Neutra
Et balanus, finis, clunis, restis, penus, amnis,
Pam-

Pampinus, ni, a pine-leaf; *corbis*, bis, a basket; *linter*, tris, a cock-boat; *torquis*, quis, a gold-chain; *specus*, cūs, a den; *anguis*, guis, a snake; *ficus*, ci, a pile; *phasellus*, li, a barge; *Lecythus*, thi, an oil-glass; *pharus*, ri, a watch-tower; and *Paradisus*, si, Paradise.

Commons of two.

III **N**ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a* are of the Common-of-two-Gender; as, *Grajin-gena*, na, a Grecian-born, of *gigno* to beget; *Agricola*, la, an husband-man, of *colo* to till; *advena*, na, a stranger, of *venio* to com. 2. To these add *Senex*, nis, an old man; *auriga*, ga, a waggoner; *verna*, na, a bondslave; *sodalis*, lis, a companion; *vates*, tis, a Prophet; *extorris*, ris, a banished man; *Patrueis*, lis, an Uncle's son; *Perduellis*, lis, an enemy in war; *Affinis*, nis, a kinsman; *juvenis*, nis, a youth; *testis*, stis, a witness; *civis*, vis, a citizen; *canis*, nis, a dog; *hostis*, stis, a foe, or enemy.

Chap. 3. Of the second Special Rule, and its Exceptions.

II. A noun encreasing long is Feminine.

IF the last syllable but one of the genitive case singu-
lar encreasing, sound long, a noun is of the fe-
minine gender; as, *Pietas*, pietatis, godliness; *virtus*, virtutis, virtue.

Except Masculines.

I. **C**ertain nouns of one syllable are Masculine; as, *Sal*, salis, salt; *sol*, solis, the Sun; *ren*, renis, the kidney; *splen*, splenis, the spleen; *Car*, Caris, a man of Caria; *Ser*, Seris, a man of Seres; *vir*, viri, a man; *vas*, vadis, a farette; as, *assis*, a pound weight; *mas*, maris, a male; *Bes*, bessis, eight ounces; *praes*, praedis, a farette; *pes*, pedis, a foot; *glis*, gliris, a dormouse; *mos*, moris, a manner; *flos*, floris, a flower; *ros*, roris, dew; *Tros*, Trois, a Trojane; *mus*, muris, a mouse; *dens*, dentis, a tooth; *mons*, montis, a mountain; *pons*, pontis, a bridge; *fontis*, a spring. seps,

Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,
Pro morbo ficus, fici, dans; atque phaselus,
Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

- IV. **C**ompositum à verbo dans a commune duorum est,
Grajugena, à gigno; agricola, à colo; id advena
monstrat, Communia,
Excipe hæc
Pæpæp.
A venio: adde senex, auriga, & verna, fodalis,
Vates, extorris, patruelis, pèrque duellis,
Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

Cap. 3.

De secundâ Speciali Regulâ, & ejus Exceptionibus.

- ‘**N**omen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pietas, pietatis,
‘Virtus, virtutis monstrat, genus est muliebre. II.
Nomen acutū
crescens est
muliebre,

- I. **M**ascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam, Excipiuntur
Masculina,
Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas-vadis,
as, mas,
Bes, Cres, præ, & pes, glis-gloris habens genitvo,
Mos, flos, ros, & Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons,
simul & fons,

D 2

Sept,

Seps, sepis, a serpent; *gryps, gryphis, a gryffon*; *Thrax, Thracis, a Thracian*; *Rex, Regis, a King*; *grex, gregis, a flock*; and *Phryx, Phrygis, a Phrygian*. 2. Nouns of manie syllables in *n*; as, *Acarnan, nánis, one of Acarnania*; *lichen, chénis, lilverwort*; *delphin, phinis, a Dolphin*. 3. Nouns that end in *o*, and signifie a bodie; as, *Leo, ónis, a lion*; *curculio, ónis, a weevil*; so also *senio, ónis, age*; *ternio, ónis, trey*; *sermo, mónis, speech*.

4. Nouns that end in

{	er,	}	as	{	crater, réris, a goblet,	}	bee
or,	conditor, tóris, a builder,				mas-		
os,	Heros, róis, a Nobleman,				culin.		

5. So are also *torrens, rentis, a brook*; *nefrens, entis, a pig*; *Oriens, entis, the East*; with manie in *dens*; as, *bidens, dentis, a two grained fork*. 6. Add to these, *gigas, gantis, a giant*; *Elephas, phantis, an Elephant*; *adamas, mantis, an adamant*; *Garamas, mantis, one of Garamatia*; *tapes, pétis, tapestrie*; *lebes, hétis, a cauldron*; *Cures, rétis, one of Cures*; *Magnés, nétis, a loadstone*; *meridies, diéi, noon*. 7. Nouns compounded of *as*, and signifie part of *as*; as, *dodrans, antis, nine ounces*; *semis, issis, half a pound*. 8. To these add, *Samnis, nítis, a Samnite*; *hydrops, drópis, the droppe*; *nycticorax, rácis, a night-raven*; *vervex, vécis, a wether*; *phœnix, nicis, a Phenix*; *bombyx, bycis, a silk-worm*. Yet of these, *Syren, rénis, a mermaid*; and also *foror, óris, a sister*; and *uxor, óris, a wife*, are feminines.

Neuteris.

II, **T**Hese nouns of one syllable, bee of the neuter gender, *mel, mellis, honte*; *fel, fellis, gall*; *lac, lactis, milk*; *far, farris, bread-corn*; *ver, veris, the spring*; *cor, cordis, a heart*; *vas, vasis, a vessel*; *os, ossis, a bone*; and *os, oris, a month*; *rus, ruris, the countrie*; *thus, thuris, frankincense*; *jus, juris, right*; *crus, cruris, the leg*; *pus, puris, corrupt matter*. 2. Nouns in *al* as, *capital, talis,*

Seps pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex-gregis, & Phryx.

2. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan, Lichen, & delphin: 3. & in o signantia corpus,

Ut leo, curculio, sic senio, ternio, sermo.

4. Mascula in er, or, & os; ceu crater, conditor, heros.

5. Sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus in dens, Quale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.

6. Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamásque, rapésque, Atque lebes, Cures, magnes, unumque meridi-

Es, nomen quintæ. 7. Et quæ componuntur ab asse,

Ut dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samnis,

Hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,

Phoenix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his

Sunt muliebre genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.

II. Sunt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, fel, Neutra.
Lac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas-vasis, os-offis, & oris,

Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in al polysyllaba in árque

D 3

Ut cap-

talis, a quoll. And in *ar*, *as*, *laquear*, *aris*, a vault,
3. *Halec*, *leci*, an herring, is of the feminine and neuter gender.

Doubtfuls.

III. These nouns bee of the Doubtful gender; *Pytho*, *onis*, a spirit of Prophecie; *serpens*, *pentis*, a ditch; *serpens*, *pentis*, a serpent; *bubo*, *bonis*, an owl; *rudens*, *dentis*, a cable; *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; *Perdix*, *dici*, a partridge; *lynx*, *cis*, a spotted beast; *limax*, *acis*, a snail; *stirps*, *pis*, a stock; *calx*, *cis*, an heel; *dies*, *diei*, a date, is onely masculine in the plural number.

Commons.

IV. These nouns bee of the Common-of-two-gender; *Parens*, *rentis*, a parent; *autor*, *toris*, an Author; *infans*, *fantis*, a babe; *adolescens*, *scentis*, a youth; *dux*, *ducis*, a leader; *illex*, *legis*, a lawless person; *heres*, *redis*, an heir; *exlex*, *legis*, an outlaw. Words compounded of *frons*, *tis*, a forehead; as, *bifrons*, *tis*, one having two foreheads; *custos*, *stodis*, a keeper; *bos*, *bovis*, a neat; *fur*, *furis*, a thief; *sus*, *suis*, a swine; *sacerdos*, *dotis*, a Priest.

Chap. 9. Of the third Special Rule, and its Exceptions.

III.

A noun containing short is of the masculine gender.

A Noun is of the masculine gender, if the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular increasing, sound short; as, *sanguis*, *sanguinis*, blood.

Except Feminines,

I. A Noun of more then two syllables, ending in *do*, which make's *dinis*; as, *dulcedo*, *dinis*, sweetness; and in *go* which make's *ginis*; as, *compago*, *ginis*, a joint, are of the feminine gender. 2. Add *Virgo*, *ginis*, a maid; *grando*, *dinis*, hail; *fides*, *dei*, *land*; *compes*, *pedis*, *fettoris*; *reges*, *getis*, a mat; *seges*, *getis*, standing corn; *arbor*, *boris*, a tree; *hyems*, *emis*, winter; *bacchar*, *charis*,

Ut capital, laquear. Neutrum halec, & muliebre.

III. **S**unt dubia hæc Python, scrobs, serpens, bubo, Dubia,
 rudens, grus.
 Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps pro trunco, pedis & calx.
 Adde dies numero tantum mas esto secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parens, autórque, infans, adole- Communia.
 scens,
 Dux, illex, hares, exlex, à fronte creata,
 Ut bifrons, custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

Cap. 9. De tertia Speciali Regulâ, & ejus exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
 Sit gravis, ut sanguis, gen tivo sanguinis, est mas.

III.
 Nomen gravi-
 ter crescentis, est
 masculinum.

I. **F**eminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in dô,
 Quod dinis, atque in go, quod dat ginis in genitivo.
 Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque
 Monstrat compago, compaginis. 2. Adhuc virgo,
 Grando, fides, compes, reges, & seges, arbor, hyemsque.

Excipiuntur
 Formicina.

charis, the hearb *Nadte's-globe*; *findon*, *dōnis*, *fine linnen*; *Gorgon*, *gōnis*, the monster *Gorgon*; *icon*, *cōnis*, an *image*; *Amazon*, *zōnis*, an *Amazon*. 3. Greek nouns ending in *as* *as*, *lampas*, *pādis*, a *lamp*. Or in *is*, as *Iaspis*, *spādis*, *jasper*; *cassis*, *fidis*, an *helmet*; *cuspis*, *spādis*, a *spear-point*. 4. One word in *us*, as *pecus*, *cūdis*, *small cattle*. 5. To these add, *forfex*, *ficis*, a *pair of shears*; *pellex*, *licis* an *harlot*; *carex*, *ricis*, *sedg*; *supellex*, *leſtilis*, *household-stuff*; *appendix*, *dicis*, an *apprentice*; *Histris*, *stricis*, an *hedghog*; *coxendix*, *dicis*, an *hip*; *felix*, *licis*, *fern*. 6. *Halcyon*, *onis*, a *king's fisher*; and *mulier*, *lūris*, a *woman*, may bee put in this rank, or rule.

Neuter.

II. **A** Noun, signifying a thing without life, is of the neuter gender, if it end in *a*; as, *problēma*, *matīs*, a *probleme*; In *en*; as, *omen*, *minis*, *luck*; In *ar*; as, *iubar*, *bāris*, the *sun-beam*; In *ur*; as, *jecur*, *cōris*, the *liver*; In *us*; as, *onus*, *nēris*, a *burden*; In *ut*, as, *occiput*, *cipitis*, the *hinder part of the head*. 2. Yet of these, *peſten*, *ctinis*, a *comb*; *furfur*, *futis*, *bran*; are masculines. 3. These are neuters, *Cadaver*, *veris*, a *carcase*; *verber*, *beris*, a *stripe*; *iter*, *itineris*, a *journe*; *suber*, *beris*, *cozk*; *ruber*, *beris*, a *road-stool*; *uber*, *beris*, a *dug*; *gingiber*, *beris*, *ginger*; *laſer*, *feris*, the herb *Benjamin*; *cicer*, *ceris*, a *vetch*; *piper*, *peris*, *pepper*; *papāver*, *veris*, *popple*; *ſiſer*, *feris*, a *parsnip*; *ſiler*, *leris*, an *oſier*. 4. *Æquor*, *oris*, the *ſea*; *marmor*, *oris*, a *marble*; *ador*, *doris*, *ſubheat*, are neuters. 5. And ſo is *pecus*, *cattle* when it make's *pecoris*.

Doubtful.

III. **T**Heſe nouns are of the Doubtful gender, *cardo*, *dinis*, the *hinge of a door*; *margo*, *ginis*, a *margent*; *cinis*, *neris*, *aſhes*; *obex*, *bicis*, a *bolt*; *putis*,

- Sic bacchar, findon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.
 3. Gracula in as vel in is finita; ut, Lampas, Iaspis.
 5. His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,
 Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.
 6. Halcyon, & mulier, possunt hâc classe reponi.
-

II. **E**st neutrale genus signans rem non animatam, Neutrū
 Nomen in a; ut, problema; en, ut omen; ar,
 ut iubar; ur dans,

Ut jecur; us, ut onus; put, ut occiput. 2. Attamen ex his
 Mascula sunt pecten, fursur. 3. Sunt neutra cadaver,
 Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, & uber,
 Gingiber, & laser, cicer, & piper, atque papaver,
 Et fiser, atque filer. 4. Neutra æquor, marmor, adôrque.
 5. Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in genitivo.

III. **S**unt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Dubiū
 pulvis

pulvis, veris, **dust**; *adeps, dipis*, **fat**; *forceps, cipis*. a pair of tongs; *pumex, micis*, a pumice-stone; *ramex, micis*, **burstness**; *anas, natis* a **duck**; *imbrex, bricis*, a gutter-tile; *culex, licis*, a **gnat**; *natrix, tricis*, a **water-snake**; *onyx, nycis*, **the nail of one's hand**, with its compounds, and *silex, licis*, a **flint**; though these bee rather used as masculines.

Common.

IV. **T**Hese nouns bee of the Common-two-gender, *vigil, gilis*, a **watchman**; *pugil, gilis*, a **champion**; *exsul, sulis*, a **banished man**; *praesul, sulis*, a **superintendent**; *Homo, minis*, a **man**; *nemo*, want's the genitive case, and in the dative make's *nemini*, **no bodie**; *martyr, tyris*, a **martyr**; *Ligur, guriis*, one of Liguria; *augur, guriis*, a **soothsayer**; *Arcas, cadis*, an Arcadian; *Antistes, stitris*, a **President**; *miles, litris*, a **soldier**; *pedes, ditis*, a **footman**; *interpretis, pretis*, an **interpreter**; *comes, mitis*, a **companion**; *hospes, spitis*, an **host, or ghest**; *ales, litis*, a **bird of wing**; *Prases, fidis*, a **President**; *Princeps, cipis*, a **Dance**; *auceps, cupis*, a **fowler**; *eques, quitis*, an **horzman**; *obses, fidis*, an **hostage**. 2. And manie other nouns derived of verbs, as *conjux, jugis*, an **husband or a wife**; *judex, dicis*, a **judg**; *vindex, dicis*, a **revenger**; *opifex, ficis*, a **workman**; and *aruspex, spicis*, a **soothsayer**.

Chap. 10. of the genders of Adjectives.

General Rules of Adjectives.
1. Of one termination.

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all three genders; as, *hic, hac, & hoc felix, licis*, **happie**; *hic, hac, & hoc, audax, dacis*, **bold**.

2. Of two terminations.

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common-of-two-gender; the second, is of the Neuter; as, *hic & hac, omnis, & hoc, omne*, **all**.

III. But

Pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,
 Adde culex, natrix, & onyx cum prole, filéxque,
 Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dici et usus.

IV. **C**ommunis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul,
 Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, &
 Arcas,

Composita

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses,

2. Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur ;

Ut, conjux, iudex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

I. **A**djectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,
 Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub una;

1. Adjectiva
 minus vocis
 sunt omnis ge-
 neris.

II. Sub gemina si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne;

Adjectiva ge-
 minæ vocis in
 prima sunt
 Commune du-
 æ, in secunda
 Neutra.

Vox commune duum prior est, Vox altera neutrum.

III. At

b. Of three terminations;

III. But if Adjectives do varie three terminations; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum, holie*: the first termination is Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third is Neuter.

c. Exception of Adjectives like Substantives.

But som are, by declining, almost Substantives, yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such are *Pauper, peris, poor*; *puer, beris, of ripe age*; *degener, generis, one that goes out of kinde*; *uber, beris, plentiful*; *dives, vitis, rich*; *locuples, plétis, wealthy*; *sospes, spitis, safe*; *comes, mitis, a companion*; *superstes, stitis, a surviver*, and som others, which due reading will teach.

d. Of Adjectives that are declined, by *is* and *er*.

2. These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester, of the plain field*; *volucer, swift in flight*; *celeber, famous*; *celer, swift*; *saluber, wholesome*: To which add *Pedester, of a footman*; *equester, of an horseman*; *acer, sharp*; *paluster, of a fen*; *alacer, cheertul*; *sylvestre, of a wood*: And these you shall decline thus: *Hic celer, hac celeris, hoc celere, swift*; or, *Hic & hac celeris, & hoc celere, swift. &c.*

Grammatica Latina.

At si tres variant voces, facer, ut sacra, sacrum ;

Vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum.

1. At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocares;

Adjectiva tamen naturâ usûque reperta.

Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,

Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes;

Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio justa docebit.

2. Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,

Campester, volucer, celebrer, celer, atque saluber :

Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junde paluster.

Ac alacer, sylvester : At hæc tu sic variabis,

Hic celer, hoc celeris, neuro hoc celere ; aut aliter sic,

Hic atque hæc celeris, rursum hoc celere est tibi Neu-
(trum.

45

Adjectiva tri-
um vocum, in
prima sunt
Masculini, in
secunda femi-
nini, in tertia
neutrius ge-
neris.

1. Adjectiva
propè Sub-
stantiva.

Adjectiva que
per et & si v-
guntur.

Cap. II.

Chap. II. Of the first Declension.

Where bee five
Declensions.

D Declension is the variation of a word by Cases. There bee five declensions of nouns.

A Noun is known of what Declension it is by the ending of the Genitive case singular ; for the Geni-

tive case	of the	1 st	2 ^d	3 ^d	4 th	5 th
end's in		a	i	is	us	ei

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative, (which is the first word) by changing the termination ; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative, in the singular number, is, for the most part, like the Nominative; and in the plural alwaies.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, the accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers; which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are alwaies alike.

The Genitive plural, in manie words admit's a Syncope, i. e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the
first bee decli-
ned like
gen/a

The first Declension is, of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a*; which are declined like *Musā*, a song.

The

Cap. II. De Declinatione primâ.

D Declinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus.
Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quin-
que.

Declinatio-
nes sunt quin-
que;

Dignoscitur nomen cujus fit Declinationis ex
terminatione genitivi singularis; definit enim

genitivus	1 ^{us}	2 ^{us}	3 ^{ius}	4 ^{us}	5 ^{us}
in	a	i	is	us	ei

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, (qui est prima vox)
mutatâ terminatione; alii autem casus à Genitivo
formantur.

Vocativus singularis *plerunque* similis est Nomi-
nativo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, ac-
cusativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero;
qui tres casus in plurali definunt in *a*.

Dativus, & Ablativus plurales semper sunt si-
miles.

Genitivus pluralis in complurimis *Syncopen* ad-
mittit.

Prima Declinatio est nominum Latinorum (ple-
runque *fœmininorum*) non crescentium in *a*; quæ
variantur sicut *Musa*.

Nomina Pri-
ma variantur
ut *Musa*.

Prima

The terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	<div> <div>Nominative</div> <div>Genitive</div> <div>Dative</div> <div>Accusative</div> <div>Vocative</div> <div>Ablative</div> </div>	} case	<i>a</i>	The example, or type thereof is	<i>Musa</i>
				<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
				<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
				<i>am</i>		<i>Musam</i>
				<i>a</i>		<i>Musa</i>
				<i>â</i>		<i>Musâ</i>
	Plurally in the	<div> <div>Nominative</div> <div>Genitive</div> <div>Dative</div> <div>Accusative</div> <div>Vocative</div> <div>Ablative</div> </div>	} case	<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
				<i>arum</i>		<i>Musarum</i>
				<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>
				<i>as</i>		<i>Musas</i>
				<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
				<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>

As is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks; *as*, *Pater-familias*, the good man of the house.

The antients dissolved *a* into *âi*, as *aulâi* for *aula*.

Filiâ, natâ, deâ, equâ, with some few others, make their Dative and Ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, which follow the form of the second Declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as*, and *es*, and Feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *es*, make their Accusative in *am* and *em*; *as*,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
<i>Æneâ</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>	<i>Æneam, an</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia, am, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

Es make's in the Accusative case *em*, in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. or Ablat.
<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisem</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i> vel <i>Anchisa</i>

E make's the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *em*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e*; *as*,

Nom.

Primæ Declinationis terminatio- nes sunt	Singulariter	Nominativo Genitivo Dativo Accusativo Vocativo Ablativo	casu	a	Eius Exemplum five Typus est	Musa
				e		Musæ
				e		Musæ
				am		Musam
				a		Musa
				â		Musâ
	Pluraliter	Nominativo Genitivo Dativo Accusativo Vocativo Ablativo	casu	e	Eius Exemplum five Typus est	Musæ
				arum		Musarum
				is		Musis
				as		Musas
				e		Musæ
				is		Musis

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Paterfamilias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *a* in *ai*; ut, *aula* pro *aule*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, cum paucis aliis Dativum & Ablativum pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc Declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as*, & *es*, & Femininorum in *a*, & *e*.

As, & *a*, Accusativum *am* & *an* faciunt; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneam, an</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiaam, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Muâ</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.

Es, in Accusativo *em* mittit, in Vocativo vel Ablativo *e*; vel *a*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. & Ablat.
<i>Anchises</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisem</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i> vel <i>Anchisâ</i>

E, Genitivum in *es* mittit, Dativum in *e*, Accusativum in *en*, Vocativum & Ablativum in *e*; ut,

E

Nom.

The Latine Grammar.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. & Abl.
<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopis</i>	<i>Penelopē</i>	<i>Penelopēn</i>	<i>Penelope</i>

Som add hereunto Hebrew words in *am*; as, *Adam, Ad*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to *us*; as, *Adamus, Adami, Avam*.

Chap. 12. *Of the second Declension.*

Of the Second
like *Magister*,
Dominus, or
Regnum.

THe second Declension is (*for the most part*) of ‘
Masculines

in { er } as { Magister,
 { { a Master.
 { { Dominus,
 { us } { a Lord. } Or of Nenters in
 um; as, Regnum,
 a Kingdom.

The terminations of this Declension are	Singularly	Nom.	r, us, um.	The Examples or Types of it are	Magister	Dominus	Regnum
		Gen.	i.		Magistri	Domini	Regni
		Dat.	o.		Magistro	Domino	Regno
		Acc.	um.		Magistrum	Dominum	Regnum
		Voc.	r, e, um.		Magister	Domine	Regnum
		Abl.	o.		Magistro	Domino	Regno
	Plurally	Nom.	i, a.		Magistri	Domini	Regna
		Gen.	orum.		Magistorum	Dominorum	Regnorum
		Dat.	is.		Magistris	Dominis	Regnis
		Acc.	os, a.		Magistros	Dominos	Regna
		Voc.	i, a.		Magistri	Domini	Regna
		Abl.	is.		Magistris	Dominis	Regnis

when the Nominative endeth in *us* the vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* **GOD**, maketh *ô Deus*, and *Filius* **a son** maketh *ô fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius* make their Vocative in *i*; as, Nom. *Georgius* **George**, Voc. *Georgi*.

Agnus, a lamb; *lucis*, a grobe; *chorus*, a quire; *fluvius*, a river, do make their Vocative case in *e* and in *us*. Wee

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. & Abl.
Penelope	Penelopes	Penelope	Penelopen	Penelope

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*, ut, *Adam*, *Ada*; quæ tamen melius ad secundam Declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*; ut, *Adamus*, *Adami*.

Cap. 12. De secunda Declinatione.

Secunda Declinatio est (plerunque) Masculino-
Srum,

Secundæ s ut
Magister, Do-
minus, Regnum

in { *er* } { *ut* } Neutorum in *um*; ut,
 { *us* } { *Dominus* } Regnum.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	<i>r, us, um.</i>	Ejus Exempli sive Typi sunt	<i>Magister</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		Gen.	<i>i.</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
		Dat.	<i>o.</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
		Acc.	<i>um.</i>		<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		Voc.	<i>r, e, um.</i>		<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		Abl.	<i>o.</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>i, a.</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		Gen.	<i>orum.</i>		<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
		Dat.	<i>is.</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
		Acc.	<i>os, a.</i>		<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		Voc.	<i>i, a.</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		Abl.	<i>is.</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

Quando Nominativus exit in *us*, Vocativus exit in *e*; sed *Demus* format *o Demus*, & *Filius*, *o fili*.

Propria Hominum in *ius* faciunt Vocativum in *i*; ut, Nom. *Georgius*, Voc. *Georgi*.

Agnus, *lucus*, *chorus*, *fluvius*, formant Vocativum in *e*, & in *us*.

Wee read in the { *Dii* } *Deorum* } *Diis, Deos, Dii,*
 plural number { *Dei* } *Deum* } *Diis, gods.*

Greek nouns of this Declension have three terminations: *eus* of the Masculine, *os* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the neuter gender.

Eus make's the genitive case in *ei*, or *eo*, the dative in *ei*, the Accusative in *e*, the Vocative in *eu*, the Ablative in *eo*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. Abl.
<i>Orpheus</i>	<i>phes, pheos</i>	<i>Orpheu</i>	<i>Orpheu</i>	<i>phes pheo</i>

Os make's the Accusative case in *on*, as; Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Ablat. *Delo*:

But Attick nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, *Androgeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *us* make their Vocative in *u*; as, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilii*, Dat. *Ilio*, Acc. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilio*.

Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the Third
like *Lapis* or
Caput.

The third Declension is very divers, for it contain's all Genders, and (at the least) eleven terminations in the Nominative case singular: in *a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x*.

The terminations of this Declension are	Singularly	Nom.	divers	The Examples, or Types of it are	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	divers		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Plurally	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

The

Legimus { *Dii* { *Deorum* } *Diis, Deos, Dii, Dii.*
 plurali { *Dei* { *Deum* }

Nomina Græca hujus Declinationis tres habent terminationes; viz. *eus* Masculini, *os* Masculini & Feminini, & *on* Neutrus.

Eus Genitivum ferunt in *ei*, vel *eos*, Dativum in *ei* Accusativum in *ea*, Vocativum in *eu*, Ablativum in *eo*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. Abl.
<i>Orpheus</i>	<i>phæi, rheos</i>	<i>Orphæi</i>	<i>Orphæa</i>	<i>phæu phæo</i>

Os Accusativum in *os* mittit; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deloi* Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Delo*, Abl. *Delo*.

Sed Attica in *os*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt; *Androgeos, Androgeos, &c.* Et contracta in *us* formant Vocativum in *n*; ut *Oedipus, Oedipus*.

O nformatur more aliorum Neutrorum; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilis*, Dat. *Ilis*, Acc. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilis*.

Cap. 13. De tertia Declinatione.

Tertia Declinatio est admodum varia. continet Ter^{ti}a, ut *Lapis*, aut *Caput*,
 enim omnia genera, & undecim (ad minimum) terminationes in Nominativo singulari: *a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x.*

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singular.	Nom.	varia	Ejus Exempli five typi sunt	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	varia		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Plural.	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

Quo.

What nouns
make the Acc.
in *im*.

The Accusative cases of som words are declined onely in *im*; as, *vis*, strength; *ravis*, hoarseness; *sitis*, thirst; *tussis*, a cough; *maguderis*, the stalk of the herb Benjamin; *Charydis*, a gulf; and *amussis*, a Carpenter's line; to which wee may add the names of Rivers; as, *Araris*, the Soan in France; *Tybris*, *Cybris* by Rome.

Est & *im*.

Som make their Accusative in *em* and *im* indifferently; as, *Pelvis*, a basin; *turris*, a tower; *buris*, a plow-stile; *puppis*, a poop of a ship; *torquis*, a chain to wear about one's neck; *securis*, an ax; *restis*, a rope; *febris*, an Ague; *clavis*, a key; *bipennis*, a two-bill; *aqualis*, a water-pot; *navis*, a ship.

The Ablative in *i*.

Their Ablative end's in *i* onely, whose Accusative end's onely in *im*; as, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of Months in *is* and *er*, do make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, September, Abl. *bri*; Aprilis, Abl. *li*.

Neuters ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part make their Ablative in *i*;

as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Vestigal, Abl. li, toll.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. ri, a spur.} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. ti, a net:} \end{array} \right. \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{For Rete in the Ab-} \\ \text{lative, is of Retis,} \end{array} \right.$

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keep *e* in their Ablative case; as, *Far*, bread-corn; *hepar*, the liver; *jubar*, the sun-beam; *nectar*, sweet wine; *gausape*, a frize; *prasepe*, a stall; *Sorahe*, a hill in Italie; *Præneste*, the citie Palestrina; *Reate*, the citie Reati in Italie.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, or *er*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, *fortis*, *ti*, strong; *Acer*, or *Acris*, *cri*, sharp.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*; as, *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi flectuntur tantum in *im*; *ut, Vim, ravim, sisim, tussim, maguderim, Charybdim, & amussim.* Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina; *ut, Aram, Tybrim.*

Quæ nomina
formant Accu-
in *im*.

Quædam Accusativos flectunt in *im*, & *em* communiter; *ut, Pelvis, turris, buris, puppis, torquis, securis, restis, febris, clavis, bipennis, aqualis, navis.*

im & em.

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum definit, iis Ablativus exit in *i*; *Tussim, Abl. tussi.*

Abl. *ja*.

Mensium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* solum mittunt; *ut, September, Abl. bri; Aprilis, Abl. Aprili.*

Neutra desinentia in *al, ar, & e*, Ablativum magna ex parte mittunt in *i*;

*ut, { Veligal, Abl. li. } Nam Rete in Ablati-
{ Calcar, Abl. ri: } vo, est à Retis.
{ Rete, Abl. ti. }*

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e* retinent *e* in Ablativo: *Far, hepar, jubar, nectar, gausape, prasape, Soracte, Præneste, Reate.*

Adjectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *is* vel *er*, & *e* Neutrum habent Ablativum mittunt in *i*; *ut, Fortis, forti; acer, vel acris, acri.*

Quæ Adjectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*; *ut, Sedalis, li.*

Except Proper names; as, *Clemens, tis, Clement.*

Nouns, whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*; as, *Pappis, Acc: pem vel pim, Abl. pe vel pi.*

Par also, with its compounds, make both *e* and *i*. Also nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior, better*; and the rest of the Adjectives except those above-mentioned in *er* or *is*: But *Pauper, poor; degener, out of kinde; uber, plentiful; fessus, safe; and hospes, an host*; make their Ablative in *e* onely.

Som Substantives; as, *Ignis, fire; alnis, a river; anguis, a snake; supellex, household-stuff; vestis, a doo:bar; unguis, a nail, or hoof*: Gentiles; as, *Arpinas, one of Arpinum*; and Verbals in *trix*; as, *Vindex, a Conquerer*, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.

Neuters, whose Ablative end's in *i*, or in *e* and *i*, make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis, tia, strong; felix, licia, happy.*

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora, stronger*: but *Plus* make's *plura* and *pluria, more.*

Som Nouns make their Nominative and Accusative plural in *es* or *eis* the diphthong; as, *Omnes or omnes, all*; and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis.*

Of Ablatives in *i* onely, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive case plural end's in *ium*; as, *utili, utilium, profitable; puppi vel pe, puppium.* Except Comparatives; as, *meliorum.*

[*Supplicum*
[*Complicum*
[*Strigilum*
[*Artificum*
And < *Veterum*
[*Vigilum*

[*Supplex, a suppliant.*
[*Complex, a partner.*
[*Strigil, an hoz=comb.*
[*Artifex, an artifice.*
} of < *Vetus, old.*
[*Vigil, a watchman.*

Memor-

Nom. plural
in *ia.*

Es & eis.

Gen. in *ium*

Excipe propria ; ut, *Clemens, te.*

Nomina, quorum Accusativi per *em* & *im* finiunt, formant Ablativos in *e* & *i* ; ut, *Puppis*, Acc. *pem* vel *pim*, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par, quoque cum compositis, *e* & *i* habet. Comparativa etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, præter ea quæ suprà dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper*, *degener*, *uber*, *sospes*, *hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Ablativum.

Substantiva quædam, ut, *Ignis*, *amnis*, *anguis*, *suppelles*, *vestis*, *unguis* : Gentilia, ut, *Arpinas* : et Verbalia in *trix* ; ut, *Victrix*, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia* ; ut, *fortis*, *fortia* ; *felix*, *felicia*. Præter Comparativa ; ut, *fortiora* ; *Plus* habet *plura* & *pluria*. Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem mittunt per *es* & *eis* diphthongum ; ut, *Omnes* vel *omneis*. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is* ; ut, *Sardis*. Nom. pl. in *ia*,
Es & *eis*.

Ex Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, fit pluraliter Genitivus in *ium* ; ut, *utili*, *utilium* ; *puppi* vel *puppe*, *puppium*. Præter Comparativa ; ut, *meliorum*, Item præter ista ; *Supplicum*, *complicum*, *strigilum*, *artificum*, *veterum*, *vigilum* Gen. plur. in *ium*.
inemor-

Memorūm	} of {	Memor, mindful.
Inopūm		Inops, poor.
Pugilūm		Pugil, a champion.
But <i>plus</i> make's plurium.		

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitive plural end in *ium*; as, *Pars partium*.

Except	Hyemūm,	} of {	Hyems, winter.
	Principūm,		Princeps, a Prince.
	Forcipūm,		Forceps, a pair of tongs.
	Municipūm,		Municeps, a free-man.
	Inopūm,		Inops, poor.
	Cælibūm,		Cælebs, a single-man.
	Clientūm,		Clients, a Client.
	Participūm,		Particeps, a Partner.

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural end's in *ium*; as, *Collis, a hill*, make's *Collium*,

To which add,	Virium,	} of {	Vis, strength.
	Salium,		Sal, salt.
	Ditium,		Dis, rich.

{	Manium,	} of {	Manes, spirits.
	Penatium,		Penates, household-gods.
	Litium,		Lis, controversie.

Yet except,

{	Vatum,	} of {	Vates, a Poet.
	Juvenum,		Juvenis, a youth.
	Canum,		Canis, a dog.
{	Opum,	} of {	Opes, wealth.
	Apum,		Apes, a Bee.
	Panum,		Panis, bread.

As, **a pound**, make's *assium*; **mas, a male**, *marium*; **was-vadis, a sword**, *vadium*; **nox, night**, *noctium*; **nix, snow**, *nivium*; **os, a bone**, *ossium*; **faux, a jaw**, *faucium*; **mus, a mouse**, *murium*; **caro, flesh**, *carnium*; **cor, a heart**, *cordium*.

Ales,

Memorū, inopum, pugilum. At plus, plurium format.

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales exeunt in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium.*

Excipe, Hyemum, principum, forcipum, municipum, inopum, calibum, clientum, participum.

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *ium*; ut, *Collis, collium.* His adde; *virium, salium, ditium, manium, penatium, litium.*

Excipe tamen vatium, juvenum, canum, opum, apum, panum.

As format asium; mas, marium; vas-vadis, vadium; nox, noctium; nix, nivium; os, ossium; faux, faucium; mus, murium; caro, carniū; cor, cordium.

Ales,

Uran;

Ales, a bird. make's *alituum*; and *cœlites*, the hea-
venly inhabitants *cœlium*; by taking to them *u*.

Bovin of *bos bovis*, an ox, is an irregular word, as
also *bobus* and *bubus*, for *bovibus*.

orum & ium,

The names of Feasts, which are onely plural, make
their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonalia*,
liorum: sometimes in *ium*; as, *Floralia*, *lium*: and
sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as, *Saturnalia*, *li-*
orum, and *lium*.

Abl. in u &
ibus.

Neuters singular in *a* make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema*, *tis*, vel *mati-*
bis. So also *Quinquatria*, *tris*, vel *tribus*.

Words derived from the Greek, when they are
declined after their own manner, imitate these
examples,

Sing.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Titan</i>	<i>ans</i>	<i>antis</i>	<i>anti</i>	<i>ant</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ante</i>
<i>Arctas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>arctas</i>	<i>arcti</i>	<i>arct</i>	<i>ar</i>	<i>arcte</i>
<i>Poëllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>poëllis</i>	<i>poëlli</i>	<i>poëll</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>poëllis</i>
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>genesis</i>	<i>genesi</i>	<i>gen</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>genesis</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>opi</i>	<i>op</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>ope</i>
<i>Teshtis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>teshtis</i>	<i>teshti</i>	<i>tesht</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>teshtis</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ido</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ido</i>
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>achilles</i>	<i>achilli</i>	<i>achil</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>achille</i>

Som of these
make the Geni-
tive plural in *is*
and *ibus*.

Chap. 14. Of the fourth Declension.

THE fourth Declension hath onely two termina-
tions in the Nominative case singular,

{*us*, Masculine and Feminine,} as {*Manus*.
{*u*, Neuter,} {*Cornu*.

The

Ales facit *alituum*, & *cœlites*, *cœlituum*, *assumen* do *u*.

Boum à *bos bovis*, anomalum est, ut etiam *bobus* vel *bubus*, pro *bovibus*,

Festorum nomina quæ tantum pluralia sunt, Genitivum aliquando in *orum*; ut, *Agonalia*, *liorum*: aliquando in *ium*; ut, *Floralia*, *lium*: aliquando tam in *orum*, quàm in *ium* mittunt; ut, *Saturnalia*, *liorum*, & *lium*.

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *is* & *ibus*; ut, *Problema*, *matibus*, vel *matīs*. Sic etiani *Quinquatria*, *triis*, vel *tribus*. Abl. in *is* & *ibus*.

Græco fonte derivata quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.	
<i>Tiran</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ant</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>	
<i>Arca</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>	
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>	
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	Horum nomul- la formant Geniti- vum pluralem in <i>ay</i> vel <i>ium</i> .
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>untis</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>unte</i>	
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>ya</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	
<i>Diao</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ios</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	

Cap. 14. De quarta Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantum sortitur terminationes in Recto singulari,

Masculinorum & Fœminorum in *us* } ut { *Manus*:
Neutorum in *u*, } { *Cornu*.
Ter-

The terminations of this Declension are	Singularly	Nom.	us, u.	The Examples, or Types of it are	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	ûs, u.		Manûs	Cornu
		Dat.	ui, u.		Manui	Cornu
		Acc.	um, u.		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u.		Manus	Cornu
		Abl.	u, u.		Manu	Cornu
	Plurally	Nom.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum.		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *ûs*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructûs*; and *aniis* for *anûs*.

The most holie name *Jesus*, make's *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *Fructu* for *fructui*.

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joint; *arcus*, a bow; *tribus* a stock; *acus*, a needle; *ficus*, a fig; *specus*, a hole; *quercus*, an oak; *lacus*, a lake; *partus*, young; *vernus*, a spit; *genu*, a knee; All other nouns make *ibus*.

Chap. 15. Of the fift Declension.

Of the Fift
like *Facies*,

THE fift Declension hath one onely termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies*, a date, and *Meridies*, noon-date,

Nom.

Terminaciones hujus Declinationis sunt	Singularly	Nom.	us, u.	Ejus Exemplarive Typi sunt	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	ûs, u.		Manûs	Cornu
		Dat.	uî, u.		Manui	Cornu
		Acc.	um, u.		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u.		Manus	Cornu
		Abh	u, u.		Manu	Cornu
	Plural.	Nom.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum,		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibat in *i* & *ûis*, in-
dè Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructûs*, & *annîs* pro
annûs.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Jesus* habet in Accusati-
vo *Jesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Jesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ubus* for-
mant; viz. *Artus*, *arcus*, *tribus*, *acus*, *ficus*, *specus*, *quer-
cus*, *lacus*, *partus*, *veru*, *genu*. Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

Cap. 15. De quinta Declinatione.

Quinta Declinatio unicam habet terminatio- Quinta, ut
Facies.
nem in *es*; ut, *Facies*.

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt fœmini-
na; exceptis *Dies*, & *meridies*.

Ter-

Nom.	es	Facies	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es</i> , <i>ti</i> , and <i>e</i> , & the Dative sometimes in <i>e</i> . Some nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as <i>plebs</i> , <i>plebei</i> . No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except, <i>Res</i> , a thing; <i>species</i> , a kinde; <i>facies</i> , a face; <i>acies</i> , an edge; <i>dies</i> , a day; <i>meridies</i> , mid-day, or noon.
Gen.	ei	Faciei	
Dat.	ei	Faciei	
Acc.	em	Faciem	
Voc.	es	Facies	
Abl.	e	Facie	
Nom.	es	Facies	
Gen.	erum	Facierum	
Dat.	ebus	Faciebus	
Acc.	es	Facies	
Voc.	es	Facies	
Abl.	ebus	Faciebus	

Chap. 16. Of the declining of Adjectives.

Adjectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.

Adjectives of three Terminations are declined like *Bonus*.

Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *r* like *Magister*; *us* like *Dominus*; *a* like *Musa*; *um* like *Regnum*.

Their example or type is	Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Bonus</i>	<i>Bona</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Gen.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Boni</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bono</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bono</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonum</i>	<i>Bonam</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Voc.	<i>Bone</i>	<i>Bona</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bono</i>	<i>Bona</i>	<i>Bono</i>
	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Gen.	<i>Bonorum</i>	<i>Bonarum</i>	<i>Bonorum</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bonis</i>	<i>Bonis</i>	<i>Bonis</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonos</i>	<i>Bonas</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Voc.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bonis</i>	<i>Bonis</i>	<i>Bonis</i>

Unus

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singulariter	Nom.	es	Eius Exemplum five Typus est	Facies	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es</i> , <i>it</i> , & <i>e</i> , exhibat, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> . Quædam nomina tertiæ Declinationis juxta hanc flectebantur; ut, <i>Plebs</i> , <i>plebei</i> .
		Gen.	ei		Faciei	
		Dat.	ei		Faciei	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Pluraliter	Nom.	es	Eius Exemplum five Typus est	Facies	Hæc Declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum pluralem in nullis sortita est, præter <i>Res</i> , <i>species</i> , <i>facies</i> , <i>aciēs</i> , <i>dies</i> , & <i>meridies</i> .
		Gen.	erum		Facierum	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciebus	
		Acc.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciebus	

Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva flectuntur tribus Terminationibus, vel tribus Articulis.

Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad formam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r* sicut *Magister*; *us* sicut *Dominus*; *a* sicut *Musa*; *um* sicut *Regnum*.

Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur sicut *Bonus*.

Horum exemplum five typus fit	Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Bonus</i>	<i>Bona</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Gen.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Boni</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bono</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bono</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonum</i>	<i>Bonam</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Voc.	<i>Bone</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bonum</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bono</i>	<i>Bonâ</i>	<i>Bono</i>
	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Gen.	<i>Bonorum</i>	<i>Bonarum</i>	<i>Bonorum</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bonīs</i>	<i>Bonīs</i>	<i>Bonīs</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonos</i>	<i>Bonas</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Voc.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>Bonæ</i>	<i>Bona</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bonīs</i>	<i>Bonīs</i>	<i>Bonīs</i>

Unus, one ; *totus, whole* ; *solus, alone* ; *ullus, any*, *alter, another* ; *uter, whether*, and their compounds, make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.

So also doth *alius, alia, aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*, &c.

Amboboth, duo, two, are irregular, and make their neuter gender in *o*, and bee thus declined.

Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Ambob</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambø</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambø</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambø</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambø</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Of three Articles like *Felix*, or *Tristis*.

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the rule of the third Declension, and are declined with three Articles.

Their Examples or Types bee	Singularly	Nom.	<i>Hic, hac, & hoc, Felix.</i>	Nom.	<i>Hic, & hac Tristis, & hoc, Triste.</i>
		Gen.	<i>Hujus, Felicis.</i>	Gen.	<i>Hujus, Tristis,</i>
		Dat.	<i>Huic, Felici.</i>	Dat.	<i>Huic, Tristi.</i>
		Acc.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Felicem, & hoc Felix.</i>	Acc.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Tristem, & hoc Triste.</i>
		Voc.	<i>Felix.</i>	Voc.	<i>Tristis, & Triste.</i>
		Abl.	<i>Hoc, hac, & hoc Felice vel Felici</i>	Abl.	<i>Tristi.</i>
	Plurally	Nom.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc Felicia.</i>	Nom.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc Tristia.</i>
		Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum Felicium.</i>	Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum Tristium.</i>
		Dat.	<i>His, Felicibus.</i>	Dat.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>
		Acc.	<i>Hos, & hæ, Felices, & hæc Felicia.</i>	Acc.	<i>Hos, & hæ Tristes, & hæc Tristia.</i>
	Plurally	Voc.	<i>Felices, & Felicia.</i>	Voc.	<i>Tristes, Tristia.</i>
		Abl.	<i>His, Felicibus.</i>	Abl.	<i>Tristibus.</i>

Nouns

Unus, totus, solus, ullus, alter, uter, & eorum composita formant Genitivum in *ius*, & Dativum in *i* : sic & *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*, &c.

Ambo & *duo* sunt anomala, & formant neutrum genus per *o* : sic autem variantur.

Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Amba</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Amba</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertiæ Declinationis, & flectuntur tribus Articulis.

Adjectiva trium Agriculorum variantur ut, *Felix*, aut *Tristis*.

Horum Exempla sunt	Singular.	Nom.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hic, Felix.</i>	Singular.	Nom.	<i>Hic, & hæc, Tristis, & hic, Triste.</i>
		Gen.	<i>Hujus, Felicis.</i>		Gen.	<i>Hujus, Tristis.</i>
		Dat.	<i>Huic, Felici.</i>		Dat.	<i>Huic, Tristi.</i>
		Acc.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicem, & hoc, Felix,</i>		Acc.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Tristem, & hoc Triste.</i>
		Voc.	<i>Felix.</i>		Voc.	<i>Tristi, & Triste.</i>
		Abl.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hic, Felice, vel Felici.</i>		Abl.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hoc, Tristi.</i>
	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.</i>
		Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium.</i>		Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.</i>
		Dat.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		Dat.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>
		Acc.	<i>Hos, & has, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.</i>		Acc.	<i>Hos, & has, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.</i>
		Voc.	<i>Felices, & Felicia.</i>		Voc.	<i>Tristes, & Tristia.</i>
		Abl.	<i>Felicibus.</i>		Abl.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>

Nouns compounded of a Substantive and Adjective are declined in both; as, *Res-publica*, *Rei-publicæ*: *Jus-jurandum*, *juris-jurandi*.

But such as are compounded of two Substantives, are declined only in the former; as, *Pater-familiās*, *Patris-familiās*.

Chap. 17. Of Comparison.

There bee
three degrees
of Compari-
son.

NOuns, whose signification may encrease or be diminished, do form Comparison.

Comparison is the varying of a word by Degree.

There bee three Degrees of Comparison, {
The Positive.
The Comparative.
The Superlative.

The Positive.

The *Positive* Degree is the first word signifying a thing Simply, and without Excess; as, *Tristis*, *sad*; *durus*, *hard*.

The Comparative.

The *Comparative* somewhat exceeds the signification of his Positive by *more*; as, *Tristior*, *sadder*, or *more sad*; *durior*, *harder*, or *more hard*.

The Superlative.

The *Superlative* exceedeth far above the Positive by *verte*, or *most*; as, *Tristissimus*, *verte sad*; *durissimus*, *most hard*.

The Comparative

is formed of the first case of the Positive, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto

The Superlative

or, and *us*, as of *Tristi* is made *tristior*, and *tristius*; of *Duri*, *durior*, and *durius*. *simus*; as, of *Tristi* is made *tristissimus*; of *Duri*, *durissimus*.

But the comparison of some words is irregular.

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting *ro* *rimus*; as, *Pulcer*, *fatè* *placerrimus*.

But

Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in utrisque ; ut, *Res-publica, Rei-publica ; jus-jurandum, juris-jurandi*

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur tantum ex parte recti ; ut, *Pater-familiâs, patris-familiâs.*

Cap. 17. De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio augeri, minuive potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Positivus.} \\ \text{Comparativus.} \\ \text{Superlativus.} \end{array} \right.$ Comparatio-
nis Gradus
sunt tres.

Positivus Gradus est prima vox quæ rem simpliciter, & sine excessu significat ; ut, *Tristis, durus.* Positivus.

Comparativus Positivi significationem per magis Comparativus augeat ; ut, *Tristior, durior.*

Superlativus supra Positivum cum Adverbio valde Superlativus vel maxime significat ; ut, *Tristissimus, durissimus.*

Comparativus $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fit regulariter} \\ \text{à primo Posi-} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{or, \& us ; ut, à Tristi fit} \\ \text{tristior, \& tristius ; à Duri,} \\ \text{durior, \& durius.} \end{array} \right.$

Superlativus $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{addendo} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{simus ; ut, à Tristi, fit tri-} \\ \text{stissimus ; à Duri, durissi-} \\ \text{mus.} \end{array} \right.$

Positiva in r, formant Superlativum assumendo *rimus ; ut, Pulcer, pulcerrimus.*

Quorundam
verò Comparatio est Irregularis.

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextimus*, most on the right hand; and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinissimus*, most on the left hand, as the Antients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make the Superlative by changing *lis* into *limus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*, **docible**; *agilis*, *agillimus*, **nimble**; *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, **tender**; *humilis*, *humillimus*, **humble**; *similis*, *simillimus*, **like**; *facilis*, *facillimus*, **easy**.

Such as are derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as of Positives in *ens*; as, *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, **cursting**; *magiloquus*, *magiloquentior*, *magiloquentissimus*, **brag**; *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, **kinde**; *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, **stately**.

If a Vowel com before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, *godly*; *magis pius*, **more godly**; *maximè pius*, **most godly**.

These also are excepted from the General Rule foregoing:

Bonus, **good**, *melior*, **better**, *optimus*, **the best**. *Malus*, **bad**, *pejor*, **worst**, *pejissimus*, **the worst**. *Magnus*, **great**, *major*, **greater**, *maximus*, **the greatest**. *Parvus*, **little**, *minor*, **less**, *minimus*, **the least**.

Multus, **much**, *plus*, **more**, *plurimus*, **the most**. *Verus*, **old**, *veterior*, **older**, *veterrimus*, **oldest**. *Maturus*, **ripe**, *maturior*, **riper**, *maturissimus*, & *maturissimus*, **verisripe**; *Nequam*, **naught**, *nequior*, **naughtier**, *nequissimus*, **the naughtiest**.

And manie such like, whose Positives are derived of Adverbs, and Prepositions; as,

Citer, **hitherly**, *citerior*, *citimus*, of *citra* on this side.

Exterus

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter, dexterior, dextimus*; & *sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus*, prout antiqui formabant.

Sex ista in *lis* formant Superlativum mutando *lis* in *limus*; viz. *Docilis, docillimus*; *agilis, agilissimus*; *gracilis, gracillimus*; *humilis, humillimus*; *similis, simillimus*; *facilis, facillimus*.

Quæ derivantur à *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

Maledicus, Maledicentior, Maledicentissimus.

Magniloquus, Magniloquentior, Magniloquentissimus.

Benevolus, Benevolentior, Benevolentissimus.

Magnificus, Magnificentior, Magnificentissimus.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius, magis Pius, maximè Pius*.

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

Bonus, melior, optimus.

Malus, pejor, pessimus.

Magnus, major, maximus.

Parvus, minor, minimus.

Multus plurimus, multa plurima, multum plus plurimum.

Vetus, veterior, veterrimus.

Maturus, maturior, maturissimus, & maturissimus.

Nequam, nequior, nequissimus.

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ab Adverbiis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut,

Citer, ceterior, citimus, à Citra.

Exterus, ou= { **extimus,** } of extra without:
terile, exterior { **extremus** }

Inferus netherlie, inferior, infimus, of infra, beneath,
Poslerus, afterlie; posterior, postremus, of post after.

Superus, ober= { **supremus,** } of supra above.
lie superior, { **summus,** }

To which are wont to bee added, **Ultra, beyond, ul-**
terior, further, ultimus, the furthest; **Propè, near, pro-**
prior, nearer; proximus, the next; **Pridem, long agoe,**
prior, former, primus, the first; and **Diu, long, diutior,**
longer, diutissimus, verie long.

Manuscr.

These words are seldom met withal in reading
 Autors, and therefore seldom to bee used; viz. **As-**
siduor, moze dailie; **Strenuor, moze stout;** **Egregiis-**
simus, verie excellent; **Mirificissimus, verie wonder-**
ful; **Pientissimus, vel piissimus, verie godlie;** **ipis-**
simus, the verie hee; **perpetuissimus, most perpetual;**
tuisissimus, most yours; **exiguissimus, the least that**
may bee; **multissimus, the most;** **proximior, nearer**
then the nearest.

Manuscr.

Som want the Positive. **Ocyor, swifter;** **ocysimus,**
verie swift; **prior, better able;** **potissimus, the best**
able; **deterior, worst;** **deterimus, the worst;** **penitior,**
inner, penitissimus, most innerlie.

Som want the Comparative. **Novus, new;** **novis-**
simus, the newest; **inclutus, famous;** **inclutissimus, most**
famous; **inuitus, unwilling;** **inuitissimus, most un-**
willing; **meritus, deserbed;** **meritissimus, most deser-**
bed; **sacer, holie;** **sacerrimus, most holie;** **falsus, fall;**
falsissimus, verie fall; **fidus, trustie;** **fidissimus, most**
trustie; **nuper, nuperus, late;** **nuperrimus, verie late;**
diversus, dliers; **diversissimus, verie dliers.**

Som want the Superlative; as, **Opimus, wealthie;**
opimior, moze wealthie; **juvenis, young;** **junior, youn-**
ger; **senex, old;** **senior, older;** **declivus, down-**
hill; **declivior, moze down-hill;** **longinquus, afar off;** **lon-**
giquior,

Exterus, exterior, {extimus, extremus,} ab Extra.

Inferus, inferior, infimus, ab Infra.

Posterus, posterior, postremus, à post.

Superus, superior, {supremus, summus} à Supra.

Quibus addi solent, *Ultra, ulterior, ultimus. Propè, propior, proximus. Præ, prior, primus; & Diu, diutior, diutissimus.*

Hæc in legendis autoribus rarò occurrunt, rarò igitur sunt usurpanda, viz. *Affiduior, strenuior: egregiissimus, mirificissimus, pientissimus, vel piissimus, ipsissimus, perpetuissimus, tuisissimus, exiguiissimus, multiissimus, proximior.* Insuperior

Quædam carent Positivo, *Ocyor, ocysissimus; Potior, potissimus; Deterior, deterrimus; Penitior, penitissimus.* Def. Aival

Quædam carent Comparativo; *Novus, novissimus; Inclytus, inclytissimus; Invitus, invitissimus; Meritus, meritissimus; Sacer, sacerrimus; Falsus, falsissimus; Fidus, fidissimus; Nuper, nuperus, nuperrimus; Diversus, diversissimus.*

Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, *Opimus, opimior; Juvenis, junior; Senex, senior; Declivis, declinior; Longinquus, longinquior.*

ginguor further off; *salutáris*, wholeſom; *ſalutarior*, more wholeſom; *ſupinus*, careleſs; *ſupinior*, more careleſs; *adoleſcens*, youthful; *adoleſcentior*, more youthful; *ingens*, huge; *ingentior*, more huge; *ſatur*, full; *ſaturior*, fuller; *antè*, befoze; *anterior*, more befoze; *inſinitus*, infinite; *inſinitior*, more infinite; *taciturnus*, ſilent; *taciturnior*, more ſilent; *communis*, common; *communior*, more common.

Licentior, more licentious, is onely the Comparative.

Improper.

Sometimes alſo Compariſon is made of Subſtan- tives, but abuſively; as, *Nero*, *Neronior*, more cruel then *Nero*; *Pœnus*, *Pœnior*, more perſidious then a *Cartaginian*.



Quæ Genus :

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns *Heteroclits*, or Irregular.

Chap. 18. Of varying *Heteroclits*.

Heteroclits are

Nouns which 1. varie or change their Gender or Declining. 2. Thoſe which want of anie new faſhion. 3. And thoſe which have too much, are *Heteroclits*.

Theſe nouns change their gender and declining, which are,

1.
Varium.

1. Feminines in the ſingular number, and neu- ters in the plural; as,

Perga-

ginguior ; salutaris, salutarior ; supinus, supinior ; adolescens, adolescentior ; ingens, ingentior ; satur, saturior ; antè, anterior ; infinitus, infinitior ; taciturnus, taciturnior ; communis, communior.

Licemior est solus Comparativus.

Interdum etiam à Substantivis fit Comparatio, sed Abusiva : abusivè ; ut, Nero, Neronior ; Pænus, Pænior.



Quæ Genus :

SIVE

ROB. ROBINSONI Regulæ de Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18. De Heteroclitis variantibus.

1. **Q**Uæ genus aut flexum variant, 2. quæcunque novato Heteroclitæ sunt

Ritu deficiunt, 3. superantive, Heteroclitæ sunt.

Hæc genus ac partim flexum variantia cernis,

Perga-

Variant

1. *Pergamus, mi*, **the town** Pergamus, make's *Per-gama, morum* ; *Supellex, lectilis*, **household-stuff**, make's *supellestilia*, unless it want the plural.

2. Neuters in the singular, and masculines and neuters in the plural ; as, *Rastrum, stri*, **a rake**, make's *rastri, & rastra, strorum* ; *frænum, ni*, **a bridle**, make's *frani, & frana, norum* ; *filum, li*, **a thread**, make's *fili, & fila, lorum* ; *Capistrum, stri*, **a halter**, make's *capistri, & stra, strorum*.

3. Neuters in the singular, and masculines onely in the plural ; *Argos, gi*, **the cittle** Argos, make's *Argi, gorum* ; *cælum, li*, **heaven**, make's *cæli, lorum*.

4. Neuters in the singular, and feminine in the plural ; as, *Nundinum, ni*, **a fair**, make's *nundina, narum* ; *epulum, li*, **a banquet**, make's *epula, larum* ; *balneum, nei*, **a bath**, make's *balnea, nearum*, though JUVENAL hath *balnea* in the plural number.

5. Masculines in the singular, and neuters in the plural ; as, *Menalus, li*, **a hill in** Arcadia, make's *Menala, lorum* ; *Dindymus, mi*, **the top of** Ida, make's *Dindyma, morum* ; *Ismarus, ri*, **a hill in** Thrace, make's *Ismara, rorum* ; *Tartarus, ri*, **Hell**, make's *Tartara, rorum* ; *Taygetus, ri*, **a hill in** Lacedæmonia, make's *Taygeta, torum* ; *Tenarus, ri*, **a hill in** Laconia, make's *Tenera, rorum* ; *Massicus, ci*, **a hill in** Italie, make's *Massica, corum* ; *Gargarus, ri*, **a top of** Ida, make's *Gargara, torum*.

6. Masculines singular, and masculine and neuters in the plural ; *Sibilus, li*, **a hissing**, make's *sibili, & sibila, lorum* ; *jocus, ci*, **a jest**, make's *joci, & joca, corum* ; *locus, ci*, **a place**, make's *loci, & loca, corum* ; *Avernus, ni*, **a lake in** Campania, make's *Averni, & Avena, norum*.

1. Pergamūs infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit,

Quod nisi plurali careat facit ipsa supellex ;

Singula fœmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.

2. Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrunque;

Rastrum, cum fræno, filum, simul atque capistrum.

3. Argos item & cœlum sunt singula neutra : sed audi,

Mascula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.

4. Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balneum,

(& hæc sunt

Neutra quidem primo, muliebria ritè secundo.

Balnea plurali Juvénalem constat habere.

5. Hæc maribus dantur singularia, plurima neutris;

Mænalus, atque sacer mons Dindymus, Ismarus, atque

Tartara, Taygetus, sic Tænara, Massica, & altus

Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrunque;

Sibilus, atque locus, & Campanus Avernus.

Cap.

Chap. 19. Of Heteroclits that want Case.

2.
Defective in
Case.

2. **T**Hose Heteroclits which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

1. Aptotes are such as varie no case; as, *Fors*, right; *nil*, nothing; *nihil*, nothing; *instar*, like; such as end in *u* and *i*; as, *cornu*, a horn; *genu*, a knee; *gummi*, gum; *frugi*, thistle; Likewise *Tempe*, a pleasant field; *tot*, so many; *quot*, how many; and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

2. A Monoprote is a noun of one onely case; as, *Noctu*, by night; *natu*, by birth; *jussu*, by bidding; *injussu*, without bidding; *astu*, by craft; *promptu*, in readiness; *permissu*, by suffrance; but wee read *astus* in the Acculative case plural, and *inficiat* a Verbal, which vvord is onely found.

3. Those are Diptotes vvhich have two cases onely, as, Nom. *forte*, Abl. *forte*, *hap*; Gen. *sponsus*, Abl. *sponsus*, of one's own accord; Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more; Gen. *repetundarum*, of bribery, Abl. *repetunda*; Gen. *jugerus*, of an acre; Abl. *jugere*; Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere*; Nom. *suppetias*, aid, Acc. *suppetias*; Nom. *tantundem*, so much, Gen. *tantidem*; Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete*; Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice*; vvhereof *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, and *jugerus* have all their cases in the plural number.

4. Those are Triptotes vvhich have three cases onely; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, *prater*; Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help; *vis*, force, vvanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

5. Relatives; as, *qui*, which; Interrogatives; as, *ecquis*, who; Distributives; as, *nullus*, none; neuter, *neither*, and *omnis*, all.

Cap. 19. De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

2. **Q**uæ sequitur manca est Numero, Casive propagat

^{2.}
Defectiva Cas
lus

1. Quæ nullum variant casum; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar;
Multa & in u simul i, ut sunt hæc cornūque, genūque;
Sic gummi, frugi; sic Tenipe, tor, quot, & omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros Aptota vocabis.

2. Estque Monoproton nomen, cui vox cadit una;
Ceu noctu, natu, iussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permissu, plurali legimus astus,
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.

2. Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,
Ut, fors, forte aabit sexto; spontis quoque sponte;
Sic plus, pluris habet; repetundarum, repetundis;
Jugeri, & sexto dat jugere; verberis autem
Verbere; suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant.
Tantundem, dat tantidem, simul impetis hoc dat
Impete; junge vicem sexto vice; nec lego plura
Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus, cum jugere, cunctos
Quatuor hæc numero casus tenuere secundo.

3. Tres quibus inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,
Ut, precis, atque precem, petit & prece blandus amicam;
Sic opis est nostra fer opem legis, atque ope dignus.
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè Dativus;
Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer aliter.

5. Quæ referunt, ut, qui; quæ percontantur, ut, ecquis?
Et quæ distribuunt; ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.

Inf.

Indefinites ; as, *quilibet*, **ante one** ; *alter*, **another**, want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, **ours**, *nostras*, **on our side** ; *meus*, **mine**, *tu*, **thou**.

Chap. 20. Of Heteroclits that want Number.

Defective
in the singu-
lar number.

1. **A**ll Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number ; as, *Mars*, **ti**, *Mar* ; *Cato*, **tonis**, *Cato* ; *Gallia*, **lia**, *France* ; *Roma*, **ma**, *Rome* ; *Ida*, **da**, **an hill near Troie** ; *Tagus*, **gi**, **the river Cato in Spain** ; *Lelaps*, **pis**, **a dog's name** ; *Parnassus*, **si**, **a hill in Phocis** ; *Bucephalus*, **li**, **Alexander's horse**. Add to these, the names of Corn ; as, *Triticum*, **whet**. Things sold by Weight ; as, *Lana*, **wooll** ; Of Herbs ; as, *salvia*, **sage** ; Of Liquors ; as, *Cervisia*, **beer** ; Of Metals ; as, *aurum*, **gold** ; wherein observ the opinion of Autors, for sometimes they keep, sometimes they reject the plural number.

2. *Hordeum*, **dei**, **barite** ; *far*, **ris**, **bread-corn** ; *mel*, **lis**, **honte** ; *mulsum*, **si**, **wine mingled with honte** ; *defrutum*, **ti**, **wine boiled to the half**, and *thus*, **thuris**, **frankincense**, have onely the three like cases in the plural number.

3. These Masculines want the plural number ; *Hesperus*, **ri**, **the evening star** ; *vesper*, **ris**, **the evening** ; *pontus*, **ti**, **the sea** ; *limus*, **mi**, **mud** ; *finus*, **mi**, **dung** ; *penus*, **ni**, **vel us**, **vituals** ; *sanguis*, **guinis**, **blood** ; *aether*, **ris**, **the skie** ; and *nemo*, **no bodie**, but *nemo* want's the Genitive and Vocative singular, as well as the plural number.

4. These Feminines have seldom the plural number ; *Pubes*, **bis**, **ripeness of age**, *salus*, **lris**, **health** ; *talio*, **onis**, **like for like** ; *indoles*, **lis**, **towardliness** ; *ruffis*, **sis**, **the cough** ;

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter ;
Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu ; & Pronomina præter
Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

Cap. 20. *De Heteroclitis defectivis
Numero.*

1. **P**ROpria cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens,
Plurima nè fuerint, ut, Mars, Cato, Gallia, Roma,
Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassus, Bucephalusque.
His frumenta dabis; pensa, herbas, uda, metalla;
In quibus Autorum quæ sint placita ipse requiras ;
Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt.

Defectiva
numero.
singulâri

2. Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mulsus, defrura,
(thûsque,
Tres tantum similes voces pluralia servant.

3. Hesperus, & vesper, pontus, limusque, fimusque;
Sic pecus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo ; sed ista
Mascula sunt numerum vix excedentia primum.
Nemo caret genito, quinto, numeroque secundo.

4. Singula feminei generis, pluralia raro ;
Pubes, atque salus, sic talio cum indole, tussis,

Pix,

pix, cis, pitch; *humus, mi, the ground*; *lues, is, the murrain*; *sitis, tis, thirst*; *fuga, ga, flight*; *quies, etis, rest*; *cholera, ra, cholera*; *fames, mis, hunger*; *bilis, li, choler*; *senectus, ta, old age*; *juventus, tis, youth*; But *soboles, lis, an offspring*; *labes, bis, a spot*; and all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei, a thing*; *species, ciëi, a kinde*; *facies, ciëi, a face*; *acies, ciëi, an edge*; and *dies, diëi, a daie*; which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add manie Feminines; as. *Stultitia, tia, foolishness*; *invidia, dia, envye*; *sapientia, tia, wisdom*; *desidia, dia, sloth*; and a manie vvords of like sort, vvvhich reading afford's: and these sometimes, but very seldom, have the plural number.

5. These Neuters have not the plural number; *Delicium, cii, one's delight*; *senium, nii, old age*; *lctum, thi, death*; *cænum, ni, dirt*; *salum, li, the salt sea*; *barathrum, thri, hell*; *virus, poison*; *vitrum, tri, glass*; *viscum, sci, bird-lime*; *penum, ni, provision*; *justitium, tii, vacation time*; *nihilum, li, nothing*; *ver, veris, the spring*; *lac, Etis, milk*; *gluten, tinis, glue*; *halec, lécis, an herring*; *gelu, frost*; *solum, lii, a throne*; *jubar, baris, the sun-beam*. Here also you may put manie such like, vvvhich you shall meet vvith as you read.

And Plural.

6. These masculines have onely the plural number; *Manes, nium, spirits*; *maiores, rum, Ancestors*; *cancelli, lorum, a lattice*; *liberi, rorum, children*; *antes, tium, the first rank of vines*; *menses, frum, women's flowers*; *lemures, rum, hobgoblins*; *fasti, storum, a Register-book*; *minores, rum, posteritie*; *natales, lium, one's stock*; *penates, tium, household gods*; and names of places; as, *Gabri, biorum*; *Locu, erorum*; and vvhatsoever the like you read any vvhere.

7. These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number;

Exuvia,

Pix, humus, atque lues, fitis, & fuga, junge quierem,
 Sic cholera, atque fames, bilisque senecta, juvenus:
 Sed tamen hæc soboles, labes, ut & omnia quinta,
 Tres similes casus plurali sæpe tenebunt:
 Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque diésque,
 Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo,
 Istis multa solent muliebria neſcere ut hæc sunt;
 Stultitia, invidia, sapientia, defidia, atque
 Id genus innumera voces, quas lectio prabet.
 Rarius his numerum, quandoque sed, adde secundum.

5. Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum;
 Delicium, senium, lethum, coenũque salũque;
 Sic barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscũque penũque:
 Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia ponas,
 Quæ tibi, si observes, occurrent multa legenti.

6. Mascula sunt numero tantũ contenta secundo;
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & antes;
 Menses [profluvium,] lemures, fasti, atque minores.
 Cum genus assignant, natales: adde penates.
 Et loca plurali, quales Gablique, Locrique,
 Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

7. Hæc sunt Fæminei generis, numerique secundi;

Exuvia, arum, an **adder's slough**; *phalera*, rarum, **hoof-trappings**; Nom. *grates*, Acc. *grates*, **thanks**; *manubia*, arum, **spoils**; *Idus*, duum, the **Ides of months**; *antia*, arum, **toze-locks**; *inducia*, arum, **truce**; *insidia*, arum, **lying in wait**; *mina*, arum, **threatnings**; *excubia*, arum, **watch and ward**; *Nona*, arum, the **stones of a month**; *nuga*, garum, **trifles**; *trica*, carum, **gew-gaws**; *Calenda*, arum, the **first date of the month**; *quisquilia*, arum, **sweepings**; *therma*, marum, **hot bathes**; *cuna*, narum, a **cradle**; *dira*, rarum, **curfing**; *exequia*, arum, **rites at funerals**; *inferia*, arum, **sacrifices to the infernal spirits**; *feria*, arum, **holidays**; *primitia*, arum, the **first fruits**; *plaga*, arum, **hunter's nets**; *valva*, varum, **double, or two-leav'd doors**; *divitia*, arum, **riches**; *nuptia*, arum, a **wedding**; *laesae*, *Etium*, the **small guts**. To these may bee added *Theba*, barum, **Thebes**; *Athena*, narum, **Athens** in Greece; of vvhich sort you may finde manie names of places.

8. These Neuters have seldom the singular number; *Maenia*, ium, iorum, the **walls of a Town**; *tesquora*, **rough places**; *praeordia*, orum, the **midriff**; *lustra*, strorum, **dens of wilde-beasts**; *arma*, morum, **sponges**; *mapalia*, liorum, **cottages**; *bellaria*, riorum, **juncates**; *munia*, niorum, an **office**; *castra*, orum, **tents**; *iusta*, storum, **rites at funerals**; *sponsalia*, liorum, **bestrothing**; *rostra*, strorum, a **pulpit**; *crepundia*, orum, a **rattle**; *cunabula*, lorum, a **cradle**; *exta*, torum, the **entrails of beasts**; *effata*, torum, a **soothsayer's mutterings**. To these may bee added the Heathenish Festival names; as, *Bacchanalia*, liorum, a **feast to Bacchus**; and if you shall read more, you may put them under this Rule.

Exuviz, phaleræ, gratésque, manubiz, & idus,
 Antiæ, & induciæ, simul insidiæque, minæque,
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,
 Quisquiliz, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,
 Inferiæ, & feriæ, sic primitiæque plagæque
 Retia signantes, & valvæ, divitiæque,
 Nuptiæ item & lactes. Addantur Thebæ, & Athenæ;
 Quod genus invenias, & nomina plura locorum.

8. *Rariis hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur ;*
 Moenia, cum tesquis, præcordia, iustra ferarum,
 Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia, castra,
 Funus iusta petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,
 Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant;
 Infantesque colunt cunabula, consulit extra
 Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantat.
 Festa Deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, jungi.
 Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoque classe reponas.

Chap. 21. Of redundant or abounding Heteroclits.

^{3.}
Redundant.

1. **T**Hese nouns (as it vverē) have too much, following divers forms; for they varie both their gender, and termination; viz. *Tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, **thunder**; *clypeus*, *pei*, & *clypeum*, *pei*, **a buckler**; *baculus*, *li*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, **a staff**; *sensus*, *fūs*, **a sent**, & *sensum*, *fi*, **a conceit, or meaning**; *ignis*, *ni*, & *ignum*, *ni*, **a raster**; *tapetum*, *ti*, *tapete*, *tis*, & *tapes*, *pētis*, **tapestry**; *punctus*, *ti*, & *punctum*, *ti*, **a point**; *sināpi*, & *sināpis*, *pis*, **mustard**; *sinus*, *ni*, & *sinum*, *ni*, **a milk-vessel**; *menda*, *da*, & *mendum*, *di*, **a fault**; *viscus*, *sci*, & *viscum*, *sci*, **bird-lime**; *cornu*, & *cornum*, *ni*, **an horn**, and *cornus*, *nūs*, **the wing of an Arnie**; (as Lucane saith) *eventus*, *tis*, & *eventum*, *ti*, **an hap**; and a thousand such, vvvhich reading vvill afford thee.

2. Som Greek vvords do make a nevv Latine vvord in their Accusative case: as, *Panther*, *theris*, make's *Panthēra*, *ra*, **a Panther**; *crater*, *tēris*, make's *cratēra*, *ra*, **a goblet**; *cassis*, *fidis*, make's *cassida*, *da*, **an helmet**; *ether*, *theris*, make's *athera*, *ra*, **the skie**.

3. In these nouns the Nominative case is divers, but the sens and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, & *gibber*, *bēris*, **a bunch, or swelling**; *cucumis*, *ma*, & *cucumer*, *mēris*, **a cucumber**; *stipis*, *pis*, & *stips*, *pis*, **wasges**; *cinis*, *nēris*, & *ciner*, *nēris*, **ashes**; *vomis*, *mēris*, & *vomer*, *mēris*, **a plowshare**; *scobis*, *bis*, & *scobs*, *bis*, **sawdust**; *pulvis*, *vēris*, & *pulver*, *vēris*, **dust**; *pubes*, *bis*, & *puber*, *bēris*, **ripeness of age**. Add hereunto nouns ending in *-or*, and *-os*; as, *Honor*, *nōris*, & *honor*, *nōris*, **honor**; *labor*, *bōris*, & *labos*, *bōris*, **labor**; *arbor*, *bōris*, & *arbos*, *bōris*, **a tree**; *odor*, *dōris*, & *odos*, *dōris*, **savor**;
Also

Cap. 21. De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

1. **H**Æc quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas:

Redundantia

Nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitrūque;
Sic clypeus, clypeum; baculus, baculum, atq; bacillum,
Sensus, & hoc sensum; tignus, tignūque; tapētum,
Atque tapēte, tapes; punctus, punctūque; sinapi,
Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis;
Sinus, & hoc sinum; [vas laetis,] mendāque mendum;
Viscus, & hoc viscum; sic cornu & flexile cornum;
At Lucanus ait cornū tibi cura finistri.
Eventus, simul eventum; Sed quid moror istis?
Talia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2. Sed tibi præterea quadam sunt Græca notanda,
Quæ quarto casu sætum peperere Latinum:
Nam panther panthera creat, craterāque crater,
Cassida cassis habet, sed & æther æthera fundit.
Hinc cratera venit, venit æthera; sic caput ipsum
Cassida magna tegit, nec vult panthera domari.

3. Vertitur his reclus, sensus manet & genus unctis;

Gibbus, & hic gibber; cucumis, cucumer; stipis, &
(stips;

Sic cinis, atque ciner; vomis, vomer; scobis & scobs;

Pulvis, item pulver; pubes, puber; quibus addes

Quæ parviunt or & os; honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.

Also apes, *pis*, & *apis*, *pis*, a **bee**; *plebs*, *bis*, & *plebis*, *bis*, the **common people**. There bee also manie nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner; as, *Delphin*, *phinis*, & *Delphinus*, *phini*, a **Dolphin**; *Elephas*, *phantis*, & *Elephantus*, *ti*, an **Elephant**; *Congrus*, *gri*, & *Conger*, *gri*, a **Conger Cel**; *Meleagrus*, *gri*, & *Meleager*, *gri*; *Teucrus*, *cri*, & *Teucer*, *cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

2. These nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension; viz. *Laurus*, *ri*, & *rûs*, a **Wale tree**; *quercus*, *ti*, & *cûs*, an **Oak**; *pinus*, *ni*, & *nûs*, a **Pine tree**; *figus*, *ci* & *cûs*, a **fig**, or **fig-tree**; *colus*, *li*, & *lûs*, a **vis-staff**; *penus*, *ni*, & *nûs*, **provision**; *cernus*, *ni*, & *nûs*, a **dog-tree**; *lucus*, *ci*, & *cûs*, a **lake**; and *domus*, *mi*, & *mûs*, an **house**, or **home**. Though these bee not thus found in everie case, you shall read also more then these, which you may well leav to old Aurors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me*, *mu*, *mi*, and *mûs*.

5. Manie Adjectives also do abound, but especially such as com of these Substantives; *Arma*, *morum*, **Arms**; *jugum*, *gi*, a **yoke**; *nervus*, *vi*, a **Crew**; *somnus*, *ni*, **sleep**; *clivus*, *vi*, a **slope of an hill**; *animus*, *mi*, a **minde**; *limus* *mi*, **mud**; *frenum*, *ni*, a **bridle**; *cera*, *ra*, **war**; *bacillum*, *li*, a **staff**; of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us* and *is*; as of *Arma*, is made *inermus* and *inermis*, **unweaponed**; *Hilarus*, *meris*, is seldom used, but *hilaris* is well known to bee used.

*His & apes, & apis, plebs, plebis. Sunt quoque multa
Accepta à Græcis geminam referentia formam ;*

Ut, delphin, delphinus, & hic elephas, elephantus,

Sic congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager;

Teucrus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cætera cuncta,

Quæ tibi par ratio dederint & lætio casta.

4. Hæc simul & quarti flexûs simul atque secundi ;

Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurûs genitivo ;

Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,

Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur,

Sic lacus atque domus, licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.

His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquant.

Tolle me, niu, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.

5. Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda :

Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundunt,

Arma, jugum, nervus, somnus, clivûsque, animûsque,

Et quot limus habet, quot frænum, & cera, bacillum;

A quibus us, simul is formes, ut, inermus, inermis.

Rarior est hilarus, vox est hilaris bene nota.

Chap. 22. Of the Kindes of Nouns.

Nouns
are,
I.
Primitive.

I. **T**Hese Nouns which follow, and such like bee *Primitives*; viz.

1. A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude in the singular number; as, *Turba*, **a rout**; *grex*, **a flock**.

2. *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as, *Sibilus*, **an hissing**; *tintinnabulum*, **a tinkling**.

2. *Interrogatives*, vvvhich vvee use in asking; as, *Quot*, **how manie**? *qualis*, **what an one**?

4. *Redditive*, vvvhich gives answer to the Interrogative; as, *Tot*, **so manie**; *talis*, **such an one**.

Indefinites, vvvhich do not define a certain thing.

And these tvvo *Relatives*, vvvhich are referred to do somtimes the vvord aforegoing; as, *Talis erat*, **qualem nunquam vidi**: *Hec* **was such an one as** *I* **never saw**.

3. *Numeral*, vvvhich signifie's a number on anie fashion, vvvhose Kindes are also manie, viz.

1. *Cardinal*, from vvvhich numerals proceed; as, *Unus*, **one**; *duo*, **two**.

2. *Ordinal*, vvvhich denote's an order; as, *primus*, **the first**; *secundus*, **the second**.

3. *Distributive*, vvvhich divide's the vvhole into parts; as, *Singuli*, **several**; *bini*, **two and two**.

4. *Partitives*, vvvhich signifieth either manie severally; as, *Quisque*, **everie one**; *uterque*, **both**: or one of manie; as, *Alter*, **one of the two**; *aliquis*, **som one**.

5. *Universal*, vvvhich signifie's a thing universally; as, *Omnis*, **all**; *nullus*, **none**.

6. *Particular*, vvvhich signifieth part of the universal; as, *Quidam*, **one**; *aliquis*, **som bodie**,

7. *Mul-*

Cap. 22. De Speciebus Nominum.

Nomina
sunt
1.
Primitiva.

I. **N**omina Primitiva sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, & hujusmodi, viz.

1. *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudinem significat ; ut, *Turba, grex.*

2. *Fictitium*, quod à sono fingitur ; ut, *Sibilus, tinnabulum.*

3. *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur ; ut, *Quot ? qualia ?*

4. *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum reddit ; ut *Tot, talis.*

Atque hæc duo
migrant ali-
quando in

Indefinita, quæ certam rem non definiunt.
Relativa, quæ ad vocem præcedentem referuntur ; ut, *Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.*

5. *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo significat, cujus etiam species multæ sunt, viz.

1. *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant ; ut, *Unus, duo.*

2. *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat ; ut, *Primus, secundus.*

3. *Distributivum*, quod totam in partes distribuit ; ut, *Singuli, bini.*

4. *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singulim ; ut, *Quisque, uterque* ; vel unum è multis ; ut, *Alter, aliquis.*

5. *Universale*, quod universaliter rem significat ; ut, *Omnis, nullus.*

6. *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat ; ut, *Quidam, aliquis.*

7. *Mul-*

7. *Multiplicative*, which signifieth the multiplic-
tie of a thing ; as, *Simplex*, **Angle** ; *duplex*, **double**.

8. *Proportional*, which signifieth proportion ; as,
Simplum, **a single part** ; *duplum* **a double part**.

9. *Temporal*, which signifieth time, as, *Binus*, **two
years old** ; *trinus*, **three years old** : and *biennis*, **of
two year's standing** ; *triennis*, **of three years stand-
ing**, or continuance.

10. *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a
thing ; as, *Binarius*, **of two pound weight** ; *ternarius*,
three pound weight.

11.
Derivative.

11. *Derivatives* are also of manie sorts, whereof
these bee the chief.

1. *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb ; as, *Lectio*,
reading ; *flexilis*, **flexible**.

2. *Patrial*, which signifieth the Countrie ; as, *Lon-
dinensis*, **a Londoner**.

3. *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation, Side, or
Seet ; as, *Græcus*, **a Greek** ; *Ciceronianus*, **one of Cice-
ro's Ade** ; *Christianus*, **a Christian**, or a follower of
Christ.

4. *Patronymic*, which is derived either from the
Father, or som other person of the familie ; as, *Æaci-
des*, **the son of Æacus**.

5. Patrony- mic nouns end in	{ des, ion, as, is, ne,	as	{ <i>Latoides</i> , the son of Latona. <i>Iapetion</i> , the son of Iapetus. <i>Ilias</i> , the daughter of Ilia. <i>Menelæis</i> , the wife of Menelæus. <i>Nerine</i> , the daugh- ter of Nereus.	{ Masculines. Femines.

6. *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification
of its Primitive ; as, *Stultulus*, **a little fool** ; *lapidulus*,
a little stone.

7. *Pos-*

7. *Multiplicativum*, quod multipliciter rei significat; ut, *Simplex*, *duplex*.

8. *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut, *Simplex*, *duplex*.

9. *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus*, *trinus*; & *Biennis*, *triennis*.

10. *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius*, *centenarius*.

11. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplicia, quorum hæc sunt præcipuæ species.

3.
Derivativa.

1. *Verbale*, quod à Verbo derivatur; ut, *Leſio*, *flexilis*.

2. *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*.

3. *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut, *Græcus*, *Ciceronianus*, *Chriſtianus*.

4. *Patronymicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quâpiam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Æacides*.

5. Definunt autem Patronymica vel in	{	des,	{	ut	{	Latoïdes	} Masculina.
		ion,		Iapétion			
	{	ar,	{	ut	{	Ilias,	} Feminina.
		is,				Menelâis,	
	{	ne,	{		{	Nerine,	

6. *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primitivi minuit; ut, *Stultulus*, *lappulus*.

7. *Pos-*

7. *Possessive*, which signifieth owing, or Possession; as, *Regius*, the King's, or, of the King; *pater-nus*, the father's, or, of a father.

8. *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, vvhich differeth from it in termination onely; as, *Iustitia*, justice, of *iustus*, just.

9. *Material*, vvhich signifieth matter; as, *Aureus*, golden.

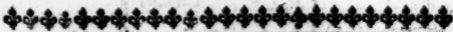
10. *Local*, vvhich denoteth a place; as, *Hortensis*, of the garden; *agrestis*, of the field.

11. *Participial*, vvhich is made of a participle, as, *Sapiens*, wise.

12. *Adverbial*, vvhich is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crassinus*, of to morrow: And here vvee must diligently observ,

1. All vvords vvwhose original is unknowvn or uncertain, may bee accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flowv from another Language; as, *Ego*, *mus*.

2. Left you bee ridiculous in finding the beginnings of vvords, you may observ diligently the terminations vvhich com to the Primitives; as of *Amo*, I love, is made *amator*, a lover; *amicus*, a friend; *amabilis*, lovely, &c.



Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun is
put for a
Noun.
There bee fif-
teen Pronouns.

A Pronoun is a Part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.

There bee fifteen Pronouns; *Ego*, I, *tu*, thou, *ui*, of himself, *ille*, hee, *ipse*, himself, *iste*, yond, *hic*, this is it, *meus*, mine, *tuus*, thine, *suus*, his own, *noſter*, ours, *veſter*, yours, *noſtras*, our countreymen, *veſtras*, yours.

7. *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat ; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8. *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ terminatione differt ; ut, *Iustitia, à iustus*.

9. *Materiale*, quod materiam significat ; ut, *Aureus*.

10. *Locale*, quod locum denotat ; ut, *Hortensis, agrestis*.

11. *Participiale*, quod à Participio fit ; ut, *Sapiens*.

12. *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur ; ut, *Crastinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quod,

1. Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quorum origo in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est ; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanent ; ut, *Ego, musa*.

2. Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes terminationes quæ Primitivis accedunt ; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis, &c.*



Cap. 23. De Pronomine.

Pronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, & vicem ejus supplens.

Pronomina sunt quindecim ; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*.

Pronomen
pro Nomine
ponitur.
Sunt autem
Pronomina
quindecim

Qui-

To which may bee added, *Qui*, ~~whith~~ ; *quis*, ~~who~~ ;
cujus, ~~whose~~ ; *cujas*, ~~whose~~ countre-man.

And som of
 these bee
 called

Whereof som
 bee

Primitive.

And som

Derivative.

According to their Species, Pro-
 nouns are called

Pronoun Substantives, viz. *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*,
 which are referr'd to three genders,
 without varying their termination.
Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest
 which bee varied by three genders;
 as, *Meus*, *mea*, *meum*.

1. *Primitives*, which are the first words ; as,
Ego, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

and these } *Demonstratives*, which are used in
 bee } shewing a thing not spoken of be-
 call'd } fore ; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, *is*.
Relatives, which wee use in rehear-
 ing a thing that was spoken of be-
 fore ; as, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

2. *Derivatives*, are such as are derived of their
Primitives ; as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*,
noſtras, *veſtras*, *cujus*, *cujas*, are derived from
 the Genitive caſes of their *Primitives*, *Mei*,
tui, *sui*, *noſtri*, *veſtri*, *noſtrum*, *veſtrum*, and *quis*,
 from the Nominative *qui*.

Of theſe ſom are

Poſſeſſives, which ſignifie owing or poſſeſſion ;
 as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter* *veſter*.

Gentiles, which ſignifie belonging to Countries, or
 Nations, to Sects or Faſtions ; as, *noſtras*, *veſtras*, and
cujas, which were once uſed as Nouns in *atis*, and *ate*.

Finites, which define, or ſet out a certain perſon ;
 as, *Ego*, *tu*.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain perſon ;
 as, *Qui*, *cujus*.

Reciprocal's, which betake themſelves to the ſame
 third perſon which went before it ; as, *Sui*, *ſuus*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldſt not forſake him.

*Everie man ſpareth his own Errors. Everie man is
 drawn of his own pleaſure.* There

Quibus addi possint, *Qui, quis, cujus, & cujas*.

Horum autem
alia dicun-
tur

Substantiva, viz. *Ego, tu, suū*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur sine variatione.

Adjectiva, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur; ut, *Meus, mea, meum*.

Secundum Speciem suam di-
cuntur

1. *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, suū, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*.

Quorum alia
Primitiva.

Atque hæc
vocantur

Demonstrativa, quæ in re aliqua non prius demonstranda usurpantur; ut, *Ego, tu, suū, ille, ipse, hic, is*.

Relativa, quibus in repetenda re aliqua prius dicta utimur; ut; *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*.

2. *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis Primitivis; ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, quis, cujus, & cujas*.

Et alia Deri-
vativa sunt.

Ex his etiam alia sunt

Possessiva, quæ possessionem significant; ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.

Gentilia, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas significant; ut, *Nostras, vestras, & cujas*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *atris*, & *ate*.

Finita, quæ definiunt certam personam; ut, *Ego, tu*.

Indefinita, quæ certam personam non definiunt; ut, *Quis, cujus*.

Reciproca, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit; ut, *Suū, suus*.

Petrus rogat ne se deserat. Parcit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i. e. *Quisque trahitur à voluptate sua*.

H

Declin-

Pronouns have
four Declen-
sions.

There bee four Declensions of Pronouns.

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension endeth in *i*: of the Second in *ius*, or *jus*: of the Third in *i*, *e*, *i*: of the Fourth in *atis*.

Of the First
are *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, bee of the first Declension, and are, thus declined.

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Ego</i> , I.	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Nos</i> , we.
	Gen.	<i>Mei</i> , of me.		Gen.	<i>Nostrum</i> , <i>nostrum</i> , of us.
	Dat.	<i>Mihi</i> , to me.		Dat.	<i>Nobis</i> , to us.
	Acc.	<i>Me</i> , me.		Acc.	<i>Nos</i> , us.
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>a Me</i> , from me.		Abl.	<i>Nobis</i> , from us.

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Tu</i> , thou.	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Vos</i> , ye.
	Gen.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee.		Gen.	<i>Vestrum</i> , <i>vestrum</i> , of you.
	Dat.	<i>Tibi</i> , to thee.		Dat.	<i>Vobis</i> , to you.
	Acc.	<i>Te</i> , thee.		Acc.	<i>Vos</i> , you.
	Voc.			Voc.	<i>Vos</i> , ye.
	Abl.	<i>a Te</i> , from thee.		Abl.	<i>Vobis</i> , from you.

Sing. & Plur.	{	Gen.	<i>Sui</i> , of himself, or	But it want's the Nominat. and Vo- cative cases in both Numbers.
		Dat.	<i>Sibi</i> , themselves.	
		Acc.	<i>Se</i> .	
		Abl.	<i>Se</i> .	

Of the second
are *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*.

Ille, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic* is, *qui*, and *quis* bee of the second Declension and bee thus declined.

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Iste</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i> .	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Isti</i> , <i>isti</i> & <i>ista</i> .
	Gen.	<i>Istius</i> .		Gen.	<i>Istorum</i> , <i>istarum</i> , <i>istorum</i> .
	Dat.	<i>Isti</i> .		Dat.	<i>Istis</i> .
	Acc.	<i>Istum</i> , <i>istam</i> , <i>istud</i> .		Acc.	<i>Istos</i> , <i>istas</i> , <i>istas</i> .
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>Isto</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>isto</i> .		Abl.	<i>Istis</i> .

Ille and *ipse* are declined like *iste*, saving that *ipse* in the Neuter Gender, in the Nominative and the Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*. *Hic*

Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.

Genitivus Singularis primæ Declinationis exit in *i*, Secundæ in *ius*, vel *jus*, Tertiæ in *i*, *e*, *i*, Quartæ in *atis*.

Ego, tu, sui, primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur. Primæ sunt
Ego, tu, sui.

Singular.	Nom.	<i>Ego</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Nos</i>
	Gen.	<i>Mei</i>		Gen.	<i>Nostrum, vel Nostrum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Mihi</i>		Dat.	<i>Nobis</i>
	Acc.	<i>Me</i>		Acc.	<i>Nos</i>
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>à Me</i>		Abl.	<i>Nobis</i>

Singular.	Nom.	<i>Tu</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Vos</i>
	Gen.	<i>Tui</i>		Gen.	<i>Vestrum, vel vestrum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Tibi</i>		Dat.	<i>Vobis</i>
	Acc.	<i>Te</i>		Acc.	<i>Vos</i>
	Voc.	<i>Tu</i>		Voc.	<i>Vos</i>
	Abl.	<i>à Te</i>		Abl.	<i>Vobis</i>

Sing. & Plur.	{	Gen.	<i>Sui</i>	Caret autem Nomina- tivo & Vocativo utrius- que numeri.
		Dat.	<i>Sibi</i>	
		Acc.	<i>Se</i>	
		Abl.	<i>Se</i>	

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis, secundæ sunt Declinationis & sic variantur. Secundæ, *Ille, ipse, iste*.

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Iste, ista, istud.</i>	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Isti, istæ, ista.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Istius.</i>		Gen.	<i>Istorum, istarum, istorum.</i>
	Dat.	<i>Isti.</i>		Dat.	<i>Istis.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Istum, istam, istud.</i>		Acc.	<i>Istos, istas, ista-</i>
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>Isto, ista, isto.</i>		Abl.	<i>Istis.</i>

Ille, & ipse variantur sicut *iste*, nisi quod *ipse* in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit *ipsum*.

Hic, &c.

Hic is declined as is aforeſaid in the Articles,
pag. 7.

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Is, ea, id.</i>	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Ii, ea, ea.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Ejus.</i>		Gen.	<i>Eorum, earum, eo-</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ei.</i>		Dat.	<i>Is, vel eis. (rum</i>
	Acc.	<i>Eum, eam,</i>		Acc.	<i>Eos, eas, ea.</i>
	Voc.	<i>(id.</i>		Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>Eo, eâ eo.</i>		Abl.	<i>Is, vel eis.</i>

So alſo is the
Compound of *is*
and *demon* decli-
ned.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>Idem, eadem, idem.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Ejusdem.</i>
	Dat.	<i>Eidem.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Eundem, eandem, idem.</i>

Singulariter	Nom.	<i>Qui, quæ, quod.</i>	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>Qui, quæ, quæ.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Cujus.</i>		Gen.	<i>Quorum, quarum, quorum.</i>
	Dat.	<i>Cui.</i>		Dat.	<i>Quibus, vel quæis.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Quem, quam, quod.</i>		Acc.	<i>Quos, quæ, quæ.</i>
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>{ Quo, } quâ, quo,</i>		Abl.	<i>{ Quibus, } Quæis.</i>

After this manner alſo is declined *Quis, quæ, quid.*

But its Com- pound thus:	Nom.	{ } {	<i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i>
	Acc.		<i>Quicquid.</i>
	Abl.		<i>Quoquo, quæquæ, quoquo.</i>

Of the third,
Mens, tuus, suus,
nos, noster, ves-
ter, cujus,

Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester, & cujus bee of the third
Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three
Terminations on this manner.

Nominativo	<i>Mens, mea, meum.</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, meæ, mei.</i>	And ſo in the other caſes.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum.</i>		<i>Tui, tuæ, tui.</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum.</i>		<i>Sui, suæ, sui.</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum.</i>		<i>Nostri, nostræ, nostri.</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum.</i>		<i>Vestri, vestræ, vestri.</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cuja, cujum.</i>			

But *Mens* hath *Mi, mea, meum*, in the Vocative caſe
ſingular. *Noſtra*

Hic declinatur ut prius in Articulis dictum est, *hic, &c.*
pag. 7.

Singulariter	Nom.	Is, ea, id.	Pluraliter	Nom.	Ii, ea, ea.
	Gen.	Ejus:		Gen.	Eorum, earum, eo-
	Dat.	Ei.		Dat.	Iis, vel eis. (rum.
	Acc.	Eum, eam,		Acc.	Eos, eas, ea.
	Voc.	(id.		Voc.	
	Abl.	Eo, ea, eo.		Abl.	Iis, vel eis.

Sic variatur etiam
compositum ab *is*
& demum :

Sing.	Nom.	Idem, eadem, idem.
	Gen.	Ejusdem.
	Dat.	Eidem.
	Acc.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singulariter	Nom.	Qui, quæ, quod.	Pluraliter	Nom.	Qui, quæ, quæ.
	Gen.	Cujus.		Gen.	Quorum, quarum, quorū.
	Dat.	Cui.		Dat.	Quibus, vel queis.
	Acc.	Quem, quam, quod.		Acc.	Quos, quas, quæ.
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	{ Quo, } { Qui, } quâ, quo.		Abl.	{ Quibus. { Queis.

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur *Quis, quæ, quid,*
&c.

Ejus compo- situm sic :	{ Nom. Acc. Abl.	{ { { {	Quisquis, quicquid.
			Quicquid.
			Quoquo, quaquâ, quoquo.

Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester, & cujus, tertiæ sunt
Declinationis, & variantur ad formam Adjectivo-
rum trium Terminationum in hunc modum.

*Tertiz, Mens,
Tuus, Suus,
Noster, Ve-
ster, & Cuius.*

Nominativo	<i>Mens, mea, meum.</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, mea, mei.</i>	Et sic in reli- quis casibus.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum.</i>		<i>Tui, tua, tui.</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum.</i>		<i>Sui, sua, sui.</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum.</i>		<i>Nostri, nostra, nostri.</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum.</i>		<i>Vestri, vestra, vestri.</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cuja, cuium.</i>			

Sed *Mens* habet *Mi, mea, meum*, in Vocativo singulari.

of the Fourth,
Nostras, Vestras,
Cujas.

Nostras, vestras, and cujas, bee of the fourth Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As,

As,	Nom. {	<i>Nostras,</i>	} i	U {	<i>Nostratis.</i>	} &c.
		<i>Vestras,</i>			<i>Vestris.</i>	
		<i>Cujas,</i>			<i>Cujatis.</i>	

of the Com-
position of
Pronouns.

Pronouns are Compounded,

1. Among themselves ; as, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi.istic, & illic.*

Istic and *illic* bee
thus declined,

	Nom.	<i>istic, istac, istoc, vel istuc.</i>
	Acc.	<i>istinc, istanc, istoc, vel istuc.</i>
	Abl.	<i>istoc, istac, istoc.</i>

Plur. Nom. & Acc. *Istac.*

2. With Nouns ; as, *Aliquis, bujusmodi.*

3. With Verbs ; as, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. With Adverbs ; as, *Nequis :*

So also

{	<i>Eccum, Eccam,</i>	} of ecce	{	<i>Ellum, Ellam,</i>
	<i>Eccos, Eccas,</i>			and is. { <i>Ellos, Ellas,</i> of

ecce and *ille.*

5. With a Conjunction ; as, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6. With a Preposition ; as, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7. With Syllabical additions ; *met, te, pte, ce, cine,* of which *met* is added to the first and second person ; as, *Egommet, tuimet :* also wee saie *sibimet* and *semet*, but wee do not saie *tumet*, lest it should seem a Verb of *tumeo*, to swell.

Te is added onely to *tu* and *te* ; as, *Tute, tete.*

Pte is added to these Ablatives Feminine ; *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ* ; as, *Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte, vestrâpte* ; and sometimes to their Masculines and Neuters ; as, *Meopte labore, suopte jumento.*

Ce is added to all cases of these Pronouns, *Hic, ille, iste*, as oft as they end in *s* ; as, *Hujusce, hoscce, hisce* ; wee saie also, *hicce, huncce*, and *ejusce*, and sometimes *hice* is read.

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of
Hic ;

Nostras, vestras, & cujas, quartæ sunt Declinationis, & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Articulorum. *Quartæ, No-
stras, vestras,
obj. 461*

ut,

Nom.	{	<i>Nostras,</i>	}	mi	{	<i>Nostatis.</i>	}	&c.
		<i>Vestras,</i>				<i>Vestratis.</i>		
		<i>Cujas,</i>				<i>Cujatis</i>		

Pronomina Componuntur,

1. Inter se; ut, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi, istic, & illic.*

Istic & illic sic variantur,

Nom.	<i>Istic, istac, istoc, vel istuc.</i>
	Acc. <i>Istinc, istanc, istoc vel istuc.</i>
	Abl. <i>Istoc, istac, istoc.</i>

Plur. Nom. & Acc. *Istac.*

2. Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3. Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. Cum Adverbiis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic etiam

{	<i>Eccum, eccam,</i>	}	ab ecce	}	<i>Ellum, Ellam,</i>
	<i>Eccos, Eccas,</i>				<i>Ellos, Ellas,</i>

 & *is* ab ecce & *ille*.

5. Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6. Cum præpositione; ut, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7. Cum syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, etne*, quarum *met* adicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut, *Egomet, tuimet, sibimet*, etiam & *semet* dicimus. Sed *tuimet* non dicimus, nè videatur esse Verbum à *tu-meo*.

Te adicitur tantum *tu & te*; ut, *Tute, tete.*

Pte apponitur istis Ablativis femininis, *Mæ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*; ut, *Meapte, tuapte, suapte, nostrapte, vestrapte*, & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris; ut, *Meapte labore. subpte jumento.*

Ce adicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic, ille iste*, quoties in *s* desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hosce, hisce*. Dicimus etiam *hicce, huncce*, & *ejusce*, & interdum *hice* legitur.

Cine apponitur casibus in *c* desinentibus; ut,

H 4

Hic-

Hic ; as, *Hiccine, haccine, hoccine ; Huncine, hancine, hoccine, &c.*

Quis and *qui* are compounded on this manner ;

Quis in composition is set after these particles, viz.

<i>En,</i>	} as	<i>Ecquis, What one.</i>
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis, no one.</i>
<i>Alius,</i>		<i>Aliquis, som one.</i>
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquis, whether anie one.</i>
<i>Si,</i>		<i>Siquis, if anie one.</i>

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *quæ* ; as, *Siqua mulier, If anie woman. Nequa flagitia, Not anie villante.* But *Ecquis* make's *ecqua* and *ecquæ* in the Feminine gender.

Quis in composition is set before these particles, viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} as	<i>Quisnam.</i>	} And these everie where keep <i>quæ</i> ; as, <i>Quanam doctrina, What learning. quacunque negotia, Whatsoeber business.</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispian.</i>	
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas.</i>	
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam.</i>	
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque.</i>	

Qui in composition is set before these particles, viz.

<i>Dam.</i>	} as	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis, who you will.</i>
<i>Libet,</i>		<i>Quilibet, who that will.</i>
<i>Cunque,</i>		<i>Quicunque, whosoever.</i>

Hiccine, haccine, hoccine; Huncine hancine, hoccine
&c.

Quis, & qui in hunc modum componuntur.

Quis in compositione hisce particulis postponitur, viz.

<i>En,</i>	} ut	<i>Ecquis.</i>
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis.</i>
<i>Alius,</i>		<i>Aliquis.</i>
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquis.</i>
<i>Si,</i>		<i>Siquis.</i>

Et hæc tam in sceminino singulari, quàm in neutro plurali, *qua* habent, non *quæ*; ut, *Siqua mulier. Nequa flagitia.* Sed *Ecquis* habet *ecquæ* & *ecqua* in sceminino.

His autem particulis præponitur *Quis* in compositione, viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} ut	<i>Quisnam</i>	} Et hæc ubique <i>quæ</i> retinent; ut, <i>Quænam doctrina; quæcunque negotia.</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispiam.</i>	
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas.</i>	
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam.</i>	
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque.</i>	

Qui in compositione præponitur his particulis, viz.

<i>Dam,</i>	} ut	<i>Quidam</i>
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis.</i>
<i>Liber,</i>		<i>Quilibet.</i>
<i>Cunque,</i>		<i>Quicunque.</i>



Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

III.

A Verb
signifieth to
bee, to do,
or to suffer.

It is
Personal,

or,

Imper-
sonal.

There be-
long to a
Verb five
Kindes,

Active.

Passive.

Neuter.

A VERB is a part of Speech which signifieth **to bee, to do, or to suffer**; as, *Sum, I am*; *Amo, I love*; *Amor, I am loved*.

Personal, which is distinguished by three Per-
sons in both Numbers; as, Singul. *Amo, I
love*; *Amas, thou lovest*; *Amat, he loveth*.
Plur. *Amamus, we love*; *Amatis, ye love*;
Amant, they love.

Impersonal, which hath no certain significati-
on of Person or Number, unless it bee by
means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me, It
behoobeth mee*; *oportet te, it behoobeth thee*,
statur à me, it is stood of mee, or *I stand*;
statur à te, it is stood of thee, or *thou standest*.

There belong to a Verb, I. Kinde. II. Mood.

III. Tens. IV. Conjugation.

I. There bee five Kindes of Verbs.

1. *Active*, which signifieth **to do**, and endeth in
o, and by taking to it *r* may make a Passive; as,
Amo, I love.

2. *Passive*, which signifieth **to suffer**, and endeth
in *or*, and by taking away *r* it may bee an Active;
as, *Amor, I am loved*.

3. A *Neuter* endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take *r*
to make it a Passive; as, *Curro, I run*; *Sum, I am*.

There bee three Kindes of Neuters, according to
their signification.

Substantive, which signifieth the Being of a thing;
as, *Sum, I am*.

Absolute, which by it self maketh up the sense; as,
dormio, I sleep.

There

Cap. 24. De Verbo, & ejus Accidentibus.

III.

VERBUM est pars Orationis, quæ esse aliquid, se agere aut
agerēve, aut pati significat; ut, *Sum*, *Amo*, pati signifi-
Amor. cat.

Estque
Personale,Verbum dividitur in pri-
mis in

Personale, quod tribus personis in utroque
numero distinguitur; ut, *Singulariter*
Amo, *Amas*, *Amat*; *Plur. Amamus*, *Amatis*,
Amant.

Vel

Impersonale, quod nullius personæ aut nu- *Impersonale*
meri certam significationem, nisi ex ad-
juncto casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet*
me, *oportet te*; *Statut à me*, *statut à*
te.

Verbo quidem accidunt, I. *Genus*. II. *Modus*.
III. *Tempus*. IV. *Conjugatio*.

Accidunt
Verbo quin-
que genera.

I. Quinque sunt *Genera Verborum*.

1. *Activum*, quod *agere* significat, & in *o* fini-
tur; ut, *Amo*: assumpto verò *r* *Passivum* formare
poteest; ut, *Amor*.

Activum.

2. *Passivum*, quod *pati* significat, & in *or* finitur,
demto verò *r* *Activi* formam resumere potest; ut,
Amor.

Passivum.

3. *Neutrum*, quod in *o* vel *m* finitur, nec ad-
mittit *r* ut fiat *Passivum*; u, *Curro*, *Sum*.

Neutrum.

Neutorum tria sunt genera, secundum eorum
significationem.

Substantivum, quod *substantiam* rei significat; ut,
Sum.

Absolutum, quod ipse sensum absolvit; ut, *Dormio*.

Tran-

Transitive, whose action passeth into a thing of near signification ; as, *Curro stadium*, **I run a race.**

Deponent.

4. A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the Active signification , as, *Loquor verbum* , **I speak a word** ; or the Neuter ; as, *Glorior* , **I boast.**

Commune.

5. A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the Active, and Passive signification ; as, *Osculor* , **I kiss, or am kissed,**

Four

Moods.

Indicative.

II. There bee four *Moods*.

1. The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh a question ; as, *Ego amo* , **I love** ; *Amas tu* , **lovest thou.**

Imperative.

2. The *Imperative* biddeth or intreateth ; as, *Amatu* , **do thou love** ; *Da mihi* , **give me.**

Subjunctive

3. The *Subjunctive* is joined with another Verb in the same sentence ; as, *Cum amarem* , *eram miser* , **when I loved, I was a wretch.**

And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in **wishing** ; and the *Potential* when it is construed by **may, can, would, or ought.**

Infinitive,
To which
belong

4. The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person, or number ; as *Amare* , **to love.** And to this mood belong three *Gerunds* , which have their case or ending of a Noun, their signification of a Verb.

The Gerunds, *Di, do, dum.*

Di,

Do,

Dum,

} as

Amandi , **of loving, or being loved.**

Amando , **in loving, or being loved.**

Amandum , **to love, or to be loved.**

And the Supines, *um & u.*

Two *Supines*, whereof

{ The first endeth in *um* , and signifieth Actively ; as, *Amatum* , **to love.**
The later endeth in *u* , and signifieth Passively ; as, *Amatu* , **to be loved.**

Five Tenses,
Present.

III. Verbs have five *Tenses*.

1. The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time present, and signifie's now to do, or to be done ; as, *Amo* , **I love.**

2. The

Transitivum, cujus actio in rem cognatæ significati-
onis transit ; ut, *Curro stadium*.

4. *Deponens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel Activi signifi-
cationem habet ; ut, *Loquor verbum* ; vel neutrius ; ut, *Glorior*. Deponens.

5. *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum, tam Activam, Commune,
quàm Passivam significationem habet ; ut, *Osculor*.

II. *Modi Verborum* sunt quatuor :

*Modi qua-
tuor.*

1. *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut in-
terrogat ; ut, *Ego amo. Amas tu ?* Indicativus;

2. *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat ; ut, *Ama tu. Da mihi.* Imperati-
vus.

3. *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eadem
sententiâ ; ut, *Cum amarem, eram miser.* Subjuncti-
vus.

Atque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in o-
prando usurpatur ; *Potentialis* verò quando per
possum, volo,, aut debeo exponitur.

4. *Infinitivus*, certam personam, aut numerum non
definit ; ut, *Amare*. Et ad hunc Modum pertinent
Tria *Gerundia*, quæ à Nomine casum, à Verbo signi-
ficationem accipiunt. Infinitivus.
Ad quem
pertinent.

Di,
Do,
Dum, } ut { *Amandi.*
 } *Amando.*
 } *Amandum.*

Gerundia
Di, do, dum.

Duo *Supina* } Prius exit in *um*, & Activè significat ; Supina,
m, & u.
quorum } ut, *Amatum.*
 } Posterius exit in *u*, & Passivè signifi-
cat ; ut, *Amatu.*

III. *Tempora Verborum* sunt quinque.

1. *Præsens*, quod de tempore præsentis loquitur,
& aliquid nunc agere vel fieri significat ; ut, *Amo.* Tempora
quinque.
Præsens.

Imperfect.

2. The *Preterimperfect tens* speaketh of the time ^a not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to bee don, but not yet finished; as, *Amabam*, **I loved**; or **I did love**.

Preterperfect.

3. The *Preterperfect tens* speaketh of the time ^a perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to bee now finished; as, *Amavi*, **I have loved**.

Preterpluperfect.

4. The *Preterpluperfect tens* speaketh of the time ^a more then perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to bee long since finished; as, *Amaveram*, **I had loved**.

Future.

5. The *Future tens* speaketh of the time to com, ^a and signifieth something to bee don for the future; as, *Amabo*, **I will love**.

The *Future tens* of the Subjunctive mood is called *Exat*; becaus it hath the signification both of the *Preter tens*, and *Future tens* together; as, *Cum Amavero*, **when I shall have loved**.

Four Conjugations:

IV. *Conjugation* is the Varying of a Verb by Moods and Tenses.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known ^a one from another by certain tokens, or characteristic letters.

whereof the
First hath *a*
long.

1. The first Conjugation hath *a* ^a long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Amare*, *amavis*.

Second *e*
long.

2. The second Conjugation hath *e* ^a long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Docere*, *doceris*.

Third *e*
long.

3. The third Conjugation hath *e* ^a short before *re* and *ris*; as, *Légere*, *légèris*.

Fourth hath
i long be-
fore *re* and
ris.

4. The fourth Conjugation hath *i* ^a long before *re* and *ris*; as *Audire*, *audiris*.

* In the Infinitive Mood Present tens of Verbs in *a*.

And in the second person singular of the Indicative mood Present tens of Verbs in *or*.

2. *Præteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum ^{Imperfectum} perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed non. ^{cum.} dum absolvi significat; ut, *Amabam*.

3. *Præteritum perfectum* de tempore perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat; ut, *Amavi*. ^{Perfectum.}

4. *Præteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plus ^{Plusquam} quàm perfectò loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfe- ^{perfectum.} ctum significat; ut, *Amaveram*.

5. *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid ^{Futurum.} de futuro significat; ut, *Amabo*.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exaſtum*, quòd præteriti simul & futuri significationem habeat; ut, *Cum Amavero*.

IV. Conjugatio est variatio Verbi per Modos & Tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, quæ à se invicem certis indicibus, sive literis characteristicis distinguuntur. ^{Conjugationes quatuor.}

1. Prima Conjugatio habet *a* productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Amâre*, *amâris*.

2. Secunda Conjugatio habet *e* productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Docère*, *docêris*.

3. Tertia Conjugatio habet *e* correptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Lêgère*, *lêgêris*.

4. Quarta Conjugatio habet *i* productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Audîre*, *audîris*.

In Infinitivo præsentis Verborum in *o*.

Et in secunda persona singularis Indicativi præsentis Verborum in *or*.

Prima habet *a* longum.

Secunda *e* longum.

Tertia *e* breve.

Quarta *i* longum ante *re* & *ris*.

Chap. 27. *Of the Form of the first Conjugation.*

Verba in (o) primæ
Conjugationis va-
riantur sicut Amo.

Verbs in (o) of the first Conjugation be varied like *Amo*, &c.

Verba in (or)
primæ Con-
jugationis
variantur si-
cut *Amor*.

Verbs in (or) of the
first Conjugation
bee varied like A.
1707.

Amo, amas, amavi, amare, amatum.

{ amáris, } amá- { sum } amáris
 { amáye, } ris { fuí, }

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1	A Mo I love.	Amor,	I am loved.
		2	<i>Amas</i> thou lovest.	<i>Amaris,</i>	thou art loved.
		3	<i>Amat,</i> hee loveth.	<i>Amare,</i>	hee is loved.
Plur.		1	<i>Amamus,</i> wee love.	<i>Amatur,</i>	wee are loved.
		2	<i>Amatis,</i> yee love.	<i>Amamini,</i>	yee are loved.
		3	<i>Amant,</i> they love.	<i>Amantur,</i>	they are loved.

Peter imperfect.	Sing.	1 Amābam,	I did	} love.	Amābar,	I was loved.
	2 Amabas,	thou didst	{ Amabaris,		thou wast loved.	
	3 Amabat,	hee did	{ Amabare,		hee was loved.	
	Plur.	1 Amābāmus	we did	} love.	Amābatur,	we were loved.
		2 Amābāmini,	ye did		Amābāmini,	ye were loved.
		3 Amābant,	they did		Amābantur,	they were loved.

Peter perf.	Sing.	1 Amavi,	I have	loved.	Amatus	sum,	I have	been loved.
		2 Amavisti,	thou hast			fui,	thou hast	
		3 Amavit,	hee hath			es,	hee hath	
		4 Amavimus,	wee have			fuiſti,	wee have	
Plur.		5 Amavistis,	ye have		Amati	estis,	ye have	
		6 Amaverunt,	they have			fuiſtis,	they have	
		7 Amaverunt,	they have			ſunt,	they have	

Index

<p>Peter perfect.</p> <p>Plur. Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amaveram</i>, I had</p> <p>2 <i>Amaveras</i>, thou hadst</p> <p>3 <i>Amaverat</i>, hee had</p> <p>1 <i>Amave amus</i>, wee had</p> <p>2 <i>Amaveratis</i>, yee had</p> <p>3 <i>Amaverant</i>, they had</p>	<p>Amatus</p> <p>Amavi</p> <p> <i>seram</i> <i>fuera</i> <i>am</i>, <i>eras</i> <i>fuera</i>, <i>eras</i> <i>fuera</i>, <i>eramus</i> <i>fuera</i> <i>amus</i> <i>eratis</i> <i>fuera</i> <i>is</i>, <i>erant</i> <i>fuera</i> <i>ant</i>, </p>	<p>I had</p> <p>thou hadst</p> <p>hee had</p> <p>wee had</p> <p>yee had</p> <p>they had</p> <p>been loved.</p>
<p>Future.</p> <p>Plur. Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amabo</i>, I shall</p> <p>2 <i>Amabis</i>, thou shalt</p> <p>3 <i>Amabit</i>, hee shall</p> <p>1 <i>Amabimus</i>, wee shall</p> <p>2 <i>Amabitis</i>, yee shall</p> <p>3 <i>Amabunt</i>, they shall</p>	<p>Amabor,</p> <p> <i>Amaberis</i> <i>Amabere</i>, <i>Amabitur</i>, <i>Amabimur</i>, <i>Amabimini</i>, <i>Amabuntur</i>, </p>	<p>I shall</p> <p>thou shalt</p> <p>hee shall</p> <p>wee shall</p> <p>yee shall</p> <p>they shall</p> <p>be loved.</p>

The Imperative Mood hath one onely Tensf,
viz. the Present Tensf.

Present tense.		Sing.		Plur.	
2	{	<i>Amas,</i>		{	<i>Amate,</i>
	{	<i>Amato,</i>		{	<i>Amatores,</i>
3	{	<i>Amet,</i>		{	<i>Amentur,</i>
	{	<i>Amato.</i>		{	<i>Amentur,</i>
1	{	<i>Amemus,</i>		{	<i>Amenmur,</i>
	{	<i>Amate,</i>		{	<i>Amamini,</i>
2	{	<i>Amatores,</i>		{	<i>Amamini,</i>
	{	<i>Amentur,</i>		{	<i>Amentur,</i>
3	{	<i>Amato.</i>		{	<i>Amentur,</i>
	{	<i>Amato.</i>		{	<i>Amentur,</i>

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense.									
Sing.	1	Amem, Ames, Amet,	I love. thou lovest. hes loveth.	Cùm	when	Amemur, Ametur, Amemini, Amentur.	I am thou art hee is wee are yee are they are	Amemur, Ametur, Amemini, Amentur.	I am thou art hee is wee are yee are they are
Plur.									
Sing.	1	Amarem, Amaret, Amaretur,	I love d. thou lovedst hee loved.	Cùm	when	Amaremur, Amaretur, Amarentur.	I was thou wast hee was wee were yee were they were	Amaremur, Amaretur, Amarentur.	I was thou wast hee was wee were yee were they were
Plur.									
Sing.	1	Amaverim, Amaveris, Amaverit,	I have thou hast hee hath	Cùm	when	Amaverimus, Amaveritis, Amaverint.	I have thou hast hee hath wee have yee have they have	Amaverimus, Amaveritis, Amaverint.	I have thou hast hee hath wee have yee have they have
Plur.									
Sing.	1	Amaviffem, Amaviffes, Amaviffet,	I had thou hadst hee had	Cùm	when	Amaviffemus, Amaviffetis, Amaviffent.	I had thou hadst hee had wee had yee had they had	Amaviffemus, Amaviffetis, Amaviffent.	I had thou hadst hee had wee had yee had they had
Plur.									

Future

Future.	Sing.	1	<i>Amavero,</i>	I shall	love.	<i>Amatus</i>	<i>ero</i>	I shall	be loved.
		2	<i>Amaveris,</i>	thou shalt			<i>fue' o,</i>	thou shalt	
		3	<i>Amaverit,</i>	hee shall			<i>eris</i>	hee shall	
	Plur.	1	<i>Amaverimus</i>	we shall		<i>Amati</i>	<i>fueris</i>	we shall	
		2	<i>Amaveritis,</i>	ye shall			<i>erit</i>	ye shall	
		3	<i>Amaverint.</i>	they shall			<i>fuerit</i>	they shall	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense.	<i>Amare,</i>	to love.	<i>Amari,</i>	to be loved.
Preterperf. and Preterplup.	<i>Amavisse,</i>	to have or had loved.	<i>Amatum esse vel fuisse</i>	to have or had been loved.
The Future tense.	<i>Amaturum esse</i>	to love hereafter	<i>Amatum iri vel Amandum esse</i>	to be loved hereafter.

Gerunds.

<i>Amandi,</i>	of loving.	<i>Amari,</i>	of being loved.
<i>Amando,</i>	in loving.	<i>Amatum,</i>	in being loved.
<i>Amandum,</i>	to love.	<i>Amatum,</i>	to be loved.

Supines.

Amatum, to love. / *Amatum,* to be loved.

Participles.

Of the Preter. tense.	<i>Amans,</i>	loving.	Of the Preter. tense.	<i>Amatus,</i>	loved.
Of the Future tense in <i>rus</i> .	<i>Amaturus,</i>	about to love.	Of the Future tense in <i>rus</i> .	<i>Amandus,</i>	to be loved.

Interpluperf.							
Plur.	Sing.			Doctus	taught	Doctus	been taught.
	1	Doctus, I	had			eram, I	had
	2	Doctus, thou	hadst			fueras, thou	hadst
	3	Doctus, hee	had			erat, hee	had
	1	Doctus, wee	had			fueras, wee	had
	2	Doctus, yee	had			eratis, yee	had
	3	Doctus, they	had			fuerant, they	had
Future.							
Plur.	Sing.			Docebor,	teach.	Docebor,	I will be taught.
	1	Docebo, I	will			Doceberis, thou	will be taught.
	2	Docebis, thou	will			Docebere, hee	will be taught.
	3	Docebit, hee	will			Docebitur, wee	will be taught.
	1	Docehimus, wee	will			Docehimur, yee	will be taught.
	2	Docebitis, yee	will			Docehimini, they	will be taught.
	3	Docebunt, they	will			Docebuntur, they	will be taught.

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense.							
Plur.	Sing.						taught.
	2	Doce, thou	teach			Doce, thou	
	3	Doceat, let him	teach.			Doceatur, let him	be
	1	Doceamus, let us	teach.			Doceamur, let us	be
	2	Doceat, teach yee.				Doceamini, be	ye
	3	Doceant, let them	teach.			Doceantur, let them	be

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense.							
Plur.	Sing.						taught.
	1	Doceam, I	teach.			Doceam, I	am
	2	Doceas, thou	teachest.			Docearis, thou	art
	3	Doceat, hee	teacheth.			Doceat, hee	is
	1	Doceamus, wee	teach.			Doceamur, wee	are
	2	Doceatis, yee	teach.			Doceamini, yee	are
	3	Doceant, they	teach.			Doceantur, they	are

Imperfect.	Sing.	Plur.	I	Clim	when	I did thou didst hee did allee did yee did, they did	teach.	I was thou wert hee was allee were yee were they were	taught.
			1	Docerem,		I did		Doceret,	I was
			2	Doceres,		thou didst		Docereris	thou wert
			3	Doceret,		hee did		Doceretur,	hee was
			1	Doceremus		allee did		Doceremur	allee were
			2	Docerētis,		yee did,		Doceremini	yee were
			3	Docerent.		they did		Docerentur	they were

Present.	Sing.	Plur.	I	I have	thou hast	hee hath	allee have	yee have	they have	been taught.
			1	Docuerim,		I have		Docuerim,	I have	
			2	Docueris		thou hast		Docueris	thou hast	
			3	Docuerit,		hee hath		Docuerit	hee hath	
			1	Docuerimus,		allee have		Docuerimus,	allee have	
			2	Docueritis,		yee have		Docueritis,	yee have	
			3	Docuerint,		they have		Docuerint,	they have	

Pluperfect.	Sing.	Plur.	I	I had	thou hadst	hee had	allee had	yee had	they had	been taught.
			1	Docuissē,		I had		Docuissē,	I had	
			2	Docuisses,		thou hadst		Docuisses,	thou hadst	
			3	Docuisset,		hee had		Docuisset,	hee had	
			1	Docuissēmus		allee had		Docuissēmus	allee had	
			2	Docuissetis,		yee had		Docuissetis,	yee had	
			3	Docuissent.		they had		Docuissent.	they had	

Future.

Future.	Sing.	1 Docuero,	I will	teach.	Doctus	Ero,	I shall	bee taught.
		2 Docueris,	thou wilt			fuero,	thou shalt	
		3 Docuerit,	hee will			eris,	hee shall	
	Plur.	1 Docuerimus,	wee will		Docti	eris,	wee will	
		2 Docueritis,	yeer will			erimus,	yeer shall	
		3 Docuerint.	they will			eritis,	they shall	
						fuertis,		
						erint.		

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterim- perf. tens.	Docere,	to teach.	Doceri	to bee taught.
Preterperf. and Preterplup.	Docuisse,	to have or had taught.	Docuisse vel fuisse.	to have or had been taught.
Future.	Dociturum esse	to teach hereafter.	Dociturum iri vel Docendum esse	to bee taught he reafter.

Gerunds.

Docendi, of teaching, or of being taught.
 Docendo, in teaching, or of being taught,
 Docendum, to teach, or to bee taught.

Supines.

Docitum, to teach. | Docitum, to bee taught.

Participles.

Of the Pre- sent tens.	Docens,	teaching	Of the Pre- ter tens.	Docitus,	taught.
Of the Fu- ture in this.	Dociturus,	about to teach.	Of the Fu- ture in this.	Docendus,	to bee taught.

Chap. 29. Of the form of the third Conjugation.

Verba in (o) tertiae Conjugationis formantur sicut <i>Lego</i> .	Verbs in (o) of the third Conjugation be formed like <i>Lego</i> .	Verba in (o) tertiae Conjugationis formantur sicut <i>Lego</i> .	Verbs in (o) of the third Conjugation be formed like <i>Lego</i> .
<i>Ego, legis, legi, legere, lectum.</i>		<i>Lego, { legens, } lectus, { sum, } legi.</i>	

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1 <i>Ego,</i>	I read.	<i>Lego,</i>	I am read.
		2 <i>Legis,</i>	thou readest.	<i>{ Legens }</i>	thou art read.
		3 <i>Legit,</i>	hee readeth.	<i>{ Legens }</i>	hee is read.
Plur.	1	<i>Legimus,</i>	wee read.	<i>Legimur,</i>	wee are read.
		2 <i>Legitis,</i>	ye read.	<i>Legimini,</i>	ye are read.
		3 <i>Legunt.</i>	they read.	<i>Leguntur.</i>	they are read.
Imperfect.	Sing.	1 <i>Legēbam,</i>	I did read.	<i>Legēbar,</i>	I was read.
		2 <i>Legēbas,</i>	thou readst.	<i>{ Legēbāri }</i>	thou wast read.
		3 <i>Legēbat,</i>	hee did read.	<i>{ Legēbare }</i>	hee was read.
Plur.	1	<i>Legēbāmus,</i>	wee did	<i>Legēbāmur,</i>	wee were read.
		2 <i>Legēbātis,</i>	ye did	<i>Legēbāmini,</i>	ye were read.
		3 <i>Legēbant.</i>	they did	<i>Legēbantur.</i>	they were read.
Pluperfect.	Sing.	1 <i>Legi,</i>	I have	<i>{ sum }</i>	I have
		2 <i>Legisti,</i>	thou hast	<i>{ fuisti }</i>	thou hast
		3 <i>Legit,</i>	hee hath	<i>{ fuisti }</i>	hee hath
Plur.	1	<i>Legimus,</i>	wee have	<i>{ sumus }</i>	wee have
		2 <i>Legistis,</i>	ye have	<i>{ fuistis }</i>	ye have
		3 <i>{ Legērunt, } Legere.</i>	they have	<i>{ fuerunt }</i>	they have

Pluperfect.

Present p.p.					
Sing.	1st.	1. <i>Legeram,</i>	I had	read.	<i>eram,</i> I had
		2. <i>Legeras,</i>	thou hadst		<i>fueram,</i> thou hadst
		3. <i>Legerat,</i>	hee had		<i>eras,</i> hee had
		4. <i>Legeratis,</i>	hee had		<i>fueras,</i> hee had
Plur.	1st.	1. <i>Legeramus,</i>	we had	read.	<i>eramus,</i> we had
		2. <i>Legeratis,</i>	ye had		<i>fueramus,</i> ye had
		3. <i>Legerant,</i>	they had		<i>eratis,</i> they had
		4. <i>Legerant,</i>	they had		<i>fuerant,</i> they had

Future.					
Sing.	1st.	1. <i>Legam,</i>	I will	read.	<i>legar,</i> I shall
		2. <i>Legis,</i>	thou wilt		<i>legeris,</i> thou shalt
		3. <i>Leger,</i>	hee will		<i>legere,</i> hee shall
Plur.	1st.	1. <i>Legemus,</i>	we will	read.	<i>legemur,</i> we shall
		2. <i>Legatis,</i>	ye will		<i>legemini,</i> ye shall
		3. <i>Legerant,</i>	they will		<i>legentur,</i> they shall

The Imperative Mood.

Present inf.					
Sing.	1st.	1. <i>Lege</i>	Read thou	read.	<i>Legere</i> Bee thou
		2. <i>Legito,</i>	let him read.		<i>Legitor,</i> let him bee
		3. <i>Legat</i>	let him read.		<i>Legatur</i> let him bee
Plur.	1st.	1. <i>Legite</i>	let us read.	read.	<i>Legitur,</i> let us bee
		2. <i>Legamini,</i>	let us read.		<i>Legamur,</i> let us bee
		3. <i>Legite</i>	read ye.		<i>Legimini,</i> bee ye
Plur.	1st.	1. <i>Legant</i>	let them read.	read.	<i>Legiminor,</i> bee ye
		2. <i>Legant</i>	let them read.		<i>Legantur,</i> let them bee
		3. <i>Legantur.</i>	let them read.		<i>Leguntur,</i> let them bee

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense.					
Sing.	1st.	1. <i>Legam,</i>	I read.	read.	<i>legar,</i> I am
		2. <i>Legas,</i>	thou readest.		<i>legaris,</i> thou art
		3. <i>Legat,</i>	hee readeth.		<i>legare,</i> hee is
Plur.	1st.	1. <i>Legamus,</i>	we read.	read.	<i>legamur,</i> we are
		2. <i>Legatis,</i>	ye read.		<i>legamini,</i> ye are
		3. <i>Legant.</i>	they read.		<i>legantur,</i> they are

Imperfect.		Plur.		Sing.		1		2		3		4		5		6		7		8		9		10		11		12		13		14		15		16		17		18		19		20		21		22		23		24		25		26		27		28		29		30		31		32		33		34		35		36		37		38		39		40		41		42		43		44		45		46		47		48		49		50		51		52		53		54		55		56		57		58		59		60		61		62		63		64		65		66		67		68		69		70		71		72		73		74		75		76		77		78		79		80		81		82		83		84		85		86		87		88		89		90		91		92		93		94		95		96		97		98		99		100		101		102		103		104		105		106		107		108		109		110		111		112		113		114		115		116		117		118		119		120		121		122		123		124		125		126		127		128		129		130		131		132		133		134		135		136		137		138		139		140		141		142		143		144		145		146		147		148		149		150		151		152		153		154		155		156		157		158		159		160		161		162		163		164		165		166		167		168		169		170		171		172		173		174		175		176		177		178		179		180		181		182		183		184		185		186		187		188		189		190		191		192		193		194		195		196		197		198		199		200		201		202		203		204		205		206		207		208		209		210		211		212		213		214		215		216		217		218		219		220		221		222		223		224		225		226		227		228		229		230		231		232		233		234		235		236		237		238		239		240		241		242		243		244		245		246		247		248		249		250		251		252		253		254		255		256		257		258		259		260		261		262		263		264		265		266		267		268		269		270		271		272		273		274		275		276		277		278		279		280		281		282		283		284		285		286		287		288		289		290		291		292		293		294		295		296		297		298		299		300		301		302		303		304		305		306		307		308		309		310		311		312		313		314		315		316		317		318		319		320		321		322		323		324		325		326		327		328		329		330		331		332		333		334		335		336		337		338		339		340		341		342		343		344		345		346		347		348		349		350		351		352		353		354		355		356		357		358		359		360		361		362		363		364		365		366		367		368		369		370		371		372		373		374		375		376		377		378		379		380		381		382		383		384		385		386		387		388		389		390		391		392		393		394		395		396		397		398		399		400		401		402		403		404		405		406		407		408		409		410		411		412		413		414		415		416		417		418		419		420		421		422		423		424		425		426		427		428		429		430		431		432		433		434		435		436		437		438		439		440		441		442		443		444		445		446		447		448		449		450		451		452		453		454		455		456		457		458		459		460		461		462		463		464		465		466		467		468		469		470		471		472		473		474		475		476		477		478		479		480		481		482		483		484		485		486		487		488		489		490		491		492		493		494		495		496		497		498		499		500		501		502		503		504		505		506		507		508		509		510		511		512		513		514		515		516		517		518		519		520		521		522		523		524		525		526		527		528		529		530		531		532		533		534		535		536		537		538		539		540		541		542		543		544		545		546		547		548		549		550		551		552		553		554		555		556		557		558		559		560		561		562		563		564		565		566		567		568		569		570		571		572		573		574		575		576		577		578		579		580		581		582		583		584		585		586		587		588		589		590		591		592		593		594		595		596		597		598		599		600		601		602		603		604		605		606		607		608		609		610		611		612		613		614		615		616		617		618		619		620		621		622		623		624		625		626		627		628		629		630		631		632		633		634		635		636		637		638		639		640		641		642		643		644		645		646		647		648		649		650		651		652		653		654		655		656		657		658		659		660		661		662		663		664		665		666		667		668		669		670		671		672		673		674		675		676		677		678		679		680		681		682		683		684		685		686		687		688		689		690		691		692		693		694		695		696		697		698		699		700		701		702		703		704		705		706		707		708		709		710		711		712		713		714		715		716		717		718		719		720		721		722		723		724		725		726		727		728		729		730		731		732		733		734		735		736		737		738		739		740		741		742		743		744		745		746		747		748		749		750		751		752		753		754		755		756		757		758		759		760		761		762		763		764		765		766		767		768		769		770		771		772		773		774		775		776		777			
-------------------	--	--------------	--	--------------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	------------	--	---------	--

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legere,} \\ \text{to read.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legi,} \\ \text{to be read.} \end{array} \right\}$
Præterperf. and Præterplup.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legiss,} \\ \text{to have or} \\ \text{had read.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legissse} \\ \text{vel fuisse,} \\ \text{to have or had} \\ \text{been read.} \end{array} \right\}$
Future.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legitur} \\ \text{esse} \end{array} \right\}$ to read hereafter.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legitur iri vel} \\ \text{legendum esse,} \end{array} \right\}$ to be read hereafter.

Gerunds.

Legendi, of reading, or of being read.
Legendo, in reading, or of being read.
Legendum, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

Legitum, to read. *Legitum*, to be read.

Participles.

Of the Pre- sent tense.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legens,} \\ \text{reading.} \end{array} \right\}$	Of the Præter tense.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legens,} \\ \text{read.} \end{array} \right\}$
Of the Fu- ture tense.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legiturus,} \\ \text{to read.} \end{array} \right\}$	Of the Future in <i>dus</i> .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Legiturus,} \\ \text{to be} \\ \text{read.} \end{array} \right\}$

Chap. 30. Of the Form of the fourth Conjugation.

Verba in (o) quar. Verbs in (o) of the fourth Conjugationis fourth Conjugationis fourth Conjugationis fourth Conjugationis
 variantur sicut | tion bee varied | variantur sicut | tion bee varied
 Audio. | like Audio. | Audio. | like Audio.

Audio, audis, audit, audite, audirum, Audire { audire, } audi- { sum, } ut-
 { audire, } { rus } { fut, } { de

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.							
Sing.	1	Audis,	I hear.	Audir,	I am heard.		
	2	Audis,	thou hearest.	Audis,	thou art heard		
	3	Audit,	hee heareth.	Audire,	hee is heard.		
Plur.	1	Audimus,	wee hear.	Audimur,	wee are heard.		
	2	Auditis,	ye hear.	Audimini,	ye are heard.		
	3	Audiant.	they hear.	Audiantur.	they are heard.		
Preterimperf.							
Sing.	1	Audiebam,	I did	Audiebar,	I was		
	2	Audiebas,	thou didst	Audiebas,	thou wast		
	3	Audiebat,	hee did	Audiebat,	hee was		
Plur.	1	Audiebamus	wee did	Audiebamus,	wee were		heard.
	2	Audiebatis,	ye did	Audiebatis,	ye were		
	3	Audiebant	they did	Audiebantur	they were		
Preterperf.							
Sing.	1	Audivi,	I have	Audivus,	I have		
	2	Audivisti,	thou hast	Audivisti,	thou hast		
	3	Audivit,	hee hath	Audivit,	hee hath		
Plur.	1	Audivimus,	wee have	Audivimus,	wee have		been heard.
	2	Audivistis,	ye have	Audivistis,	ye have		
	3	Audiverunt	they have	Audiverunt	they have		

Present perfect.	Sing.	1	Audi veram,	I had	Caro Audire	eram	I had	been heard.
		2	Audi veras,	thou hadst		fueram,	thou hadst	
		3	Audi verat,	hee had		eras	hee had	
	Plur.	1	Audi veramus	wee had	Audi i	erat	wee had	
		2	Audi veratis,	ye had		fuerat,	ye had	
		3	Audi verant,	they had		eramus	they had	
Future.	Sing.	1	Audiam,	I shall	Audire	fueramus	I shall	bee heard.
		2	Audies,	thou shalt		eratis	thou shalt	
		3	Audiet,	hee shall		fueratis,	hee shall	
	Plur.	1	Audiemus	wee shall	Audient	erant	wee shall	
		2	Audietis,	ye shall		fuerant,	ye shall	
		3	Audient.	they shall		fuerant.	they shall	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	2	Audi	Hear thou.	Audire	Audi	W ee thou he arid.	bee heard.
		3	Audis.	let him hear.		Auditor	let him bee heard.	
		3	Audiat.	let him hear.		Auditor	let him bee heard.	
	Plur.	1	Audiamus,	let us hear.	Audiamini	Audiamus,	let us bee heard.	
		2	Audite	hear yee.		Audimini	let yee bee heard.	
		3	Audietis,	let them hear.		Audiant	let them bee heard.	

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1	Audiam,	I hear.	Audire	Audiam,	I am	beard.
		2	Audias,	thou hearest.		Audias	thou art	
		3	Audiat,	hee heareth.		Audiat	hee is	
	Plur.	1	Audiamus	wee hear.	Audiamini	Audiamus	wee are	
		2	Audiamini,	ye hear.		Audiamini	ye are	
		3	Audiant.	they hear.		Audiant	they are	

Preterimperf.	Sing.	1	<i>Audiēem,</i>	I heard.	<i>Audier,</i>	I was	heard.
		2	<i>Audires,</i>	thou heardest.	<i>Audieris</i>	thou wast	
		3	<i>Audiret.</i>	hee heard.	<i>Audiret</i>	hee was	
	Plur.	1	<i>Audiēmus</i>	when wee heard.	<i>Audieretis,</i>	wee were	
		2	<i>Audiretis,</i>		<i>Audierimur,</i>	wee were	
		3	<i>Audirent.</i>		<i>Audierimini</i>	they were	

Preterperf.	Sing.	1	<i>Audiuerim,</i>	I have	<i>Audiu.</i>	<i>fuerim,</i>	I have	been heard.
		2	<i>Audiueris,</i>	thou hast		<i>fueris</i>	thou hast	
		3	<i>Audiuerit,</i>	hee hath		<i>fuerit</i>	hee hath	
	Plur.	1	<i>Audiuerimus</i>	wee have		<i>fuerimus</i>	wee have	
		2	<i>Audiueritis,</i>	ye have		<i>fueritis</i>	ye have	
		3	<i>Audiuerint,</i>	they have		<i>fuerint.</i>	they have	

Preterpluperf.	Sing.	1	<i>Audiuissem,</i>	I had	<i>Audiu.</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	I had	been heard.
		2	<i>Audiuisset,</i>	thou hadst		<i>fuisset</i>	thou hadst	
		3	<i>Audiuisset,</i>	hee had		<i>fuisset</i>	hee had	
	Plur.	1	<i>Audiuissemus</i>	wee had		<i>fuissemus</i>	wee had	
		2	<i>Audiuissetis,</i>	ye had		<i>fuissetis</i>	ye had	
		3	<i>Audiuissetent,</i>	they had		<i>fuissetent.</i>	they had	

Future.	Sing.	1	<i>Audiuerō,</i>	I shall	<i>Audiu.</i>	<i>fuerō,</i>	I shall	be heard.
		2	<i>Audiueris,</i>	thou shalt		<i>fueris</i>	thou shalt	
		3	<i>Audiuerit,</i>	hee shall		<i>fuerit</i>	hee shall	
	Plur.	1	<i>Audiuerimus</i>	wee shall		<i>fuerimus</i>	wee shall	
		2	<i>Audiueritis</i>	ye shall		<i>fueritis</i>	ye shall	
		3	<i>Audiuerint.</i>	they shall		<i>fuerint</i>	they shall	

The

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tens. } *Audire*, { to hear. } } *Audiri*, { to be heard.

Peterperf.
and
Peterplap. } *Audivisse*, { to have
heard. } } *Audirum
esse vel
fuisse*, { to have or
had been
heard.

Future. } *Auditurum
esse* { to hear
hereafter. } } *Auditum iri vel
Audiendum esse*, { to be heard
hereafter.

Gerunds.

Audiendi, of hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendo, in hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendum, to hear, or to be heard.

Supines.

Audirum, to hear, *Auditu*, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Present tens. } } *Audiens*, hearing.
Future in *rus*. } } *Auditurus*, to hear.
Of the Peter tens. } } *Auditus*, heard.
Future in *dus*. } } *Audiendus*, to be heard.



As in Præsenti.

O R,

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules of the Preterperfect tenses and Supines of Verbs.

*As in præ-
senti con-
tein's Rules
of the
Preter ten-
ses of Sim-
ple Verbs.*

*1.
In the first
Conjugati-
on As, ma-
ke's avi.*

Chap. 21. Of the Preterperfect tenses and Supines of Verbs.

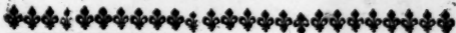
I. *AS* in the Present tens, make's the Preterper-
fect tens in *avi*; as, *Na, nas, to swim, navi;*
vocito, vocitas, to call often, vocitavi. Except *1. Lavo;*
lavi, to wash; *juvo, juvi, to help;* *nexo, nexui, to*
knit; *seco, secui, to cut;* *neco, necui, to kill;* *mico, mi-*
cui, to shine; *plico, plicui, to fold;* *frico, fricui, to rub;*
domo, domui, to tame; *tono, tonui, to thunder;* *sono,*
sonui, to sound; *crepo, crepui, to crack;* *veto, vetui, to*
forbid; *cubo, cubui, to lie down;* which seldom make's
avi. **2.** *Do, das to give,* will make *dedi;* and *sto, stas,*
to stand, steti.

*1.
In the se-
cond Es
make's ui.*

E*S* in the Present tens, make's the Preterperfect
tens in *ui*; as, *Nigreo, nigres, nigrui, to wax black;*
jubeo, jubes, jussi, to bid; *sorbeo, sorbui, & sorpsi, to sup;*
mulceo, mulsi to allmage; *luceo, luxi, to shine;* *sedeo,*
sedi, to sit; *video, vidi, to see;* *prandeo, prandi, to dine;*
strideo, stridi, to make a noise; *suadeo, suasi, to persuade;*
rideo, risi, to laugh; and *ardeo, arsi, to burn.*

2. The first syllable is doubled in these four fol-
lowing; *viz. Pendeo pependi to hang; mordeo, momordi,*
to bite.

Spondeo



As in Præsenti :

SIVE

GUILIELMI LILII Regulae de Præteritis & Supinis Verborum.

Cap. 31. De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.

- I. **A**S in præsenti perfectum format in avi ;
Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vociravi.
 1. Deme lavo lavi, juvo juvi, nexoque nexui ;
Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum
Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat :
Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum
Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat :
Atque cubo cubui : raro hæc formantur in avi,
 2. Do das ritè dedi, sto stas formare steti vult.

Regulae de
Præteritis
Verborum
Simplici-
um.

1.
In prima
Conjugati-
one *as* for-
mat *avi*.

- II. **E**S in præsenti perfectum format ui dans ;
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui : 1. jubeo excipe jussi,
 Sorbeo sorbui *habet* sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi ;
 Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque
 Vult vidi ; sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
 Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, *habet* ardeo & arsi.

2.
In Secun-
da *es* for-
mat *ui*.

2. Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima ;
 Pendeco namque pependi, mordeco vultque momordi,
 Spondeo

Spondeo, spondi, to promise; *tondeo, torondi, to clip or shear.*

3. If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *fi*; as, *Urgeo, urfi, to urge*; *mulgeo, mulsi, & mulxi, to milk*; *frigeo, frixi, to bee cold*; *lugeo, luxi, to lament*; *augeo, & auxi, to encrease.*

4. *Fleo, fles, to sweep*, make's *flevi*; *leo, lex, to be-smear*, *levi*, and its compound *delco*, make's *delevi*, to blot out; *pleo, ples, to fill*, make's *plevi*. 5. *Neo, nes, to spin*, *nevi*; *maneo, to tarrie*, make's *mansi*. 6. *Torqueo, to twist*, *torfi*. 7. And *hereo, to stick*, *hafi*.

8. *Veo* is made *vi*; as, *Ferveo, servi, to bee hot*; but *niveo, to swim*, and its compound *conniveo* to close and open the eyes, make's *nivi* & *nixi*; *cieo, to trouble*, make's *civi*; and *vico, to binde*, *vievi*.

In the
Third, &
make's *bi*.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Preter-perfect tens, as is plain here. *Bo* is made *bi*; as, *Lambo, lambi, to lick*. Except 1. *Scribo, scripsi, to write*; *nubo, nupsi, to bee married to a man*; and *cumbo, cubui, to lie down*.

Co, ci.

Co is made *ci*; as *Vinco vici to overcome*. But 1. *Parco* make's *peperci*, & *parfi, to spare*; *dico, dixi, to late*; and *duco, duxi, to lead*.

Do, di.

Do is made *di*; as, *mando mandi, to eat*; but *scindo, to cut*, make's *scidi*; *findo, fidi, to cleave*; *fundo, fudi, to pour out*; *tundo, tutudi, to knock*; *pendo pependi, to weigh*; *tendo, tetendi, to stretch*; *pedo pepedi, to fart*; *cado, cecidi, to fall*; *cado, cecidi, to beat*; *cedo, cessi, to give place*; *vado, to go away*; *rado, to shabe*; *ludo, to hurt*; *ludo, to please*; *divido, to divide*; *trudo, to thrust*; *claudio, to shut*; *plaudo, to clap hands*; *rodo, to gnaw*, change alwaies *do* into *fi*.

Go, xi.

Go is made *xi*; as, *jungo, to join*, *junxi*; but *r* before *go* make's *fi*; as, *spargo, sparsi, to sprinkle*; *lego, to read* make's *legi*; and *ago, to do*, *egi*; *tango, tetigi*,

Spondeo, habere spondi ; tondeo, vultque rotondi,

3. L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in fi.
Urgeo, ut urfi ; mulgeo, mulsi, dat quoque mulxi ;
Frigeo, frixi ; lugeo, luxi ; habet augeo, & auxi.

4. Dat Fleo, fles, flevi ; leo, les, levi ; indeque natum
Deleo, deleui ; pleo, ples, plevi. 5. Neo, nevi ;
A maneo, mansi, formatur. 6. Torqueo, torfi.

7. Hæreo, vult hæsi. 8. Veo fit vi, ut Ferveo, servi.
Niveo, & indè satum poscit conniveo, nivi
Et nixi ; cico, civi ; vicòque vievi.

Tertia Præteritum formabit, ut hîc manifestum.

Bo fit bi ; ut, Lambo, lambi. 1. Scribo, excipe scripsi ;
Et nubo, nupsi ; antiquum cumbo, cubui, dat.

In Tertia,
Bo fit bi.

Co fit ci ; ut, Vinco, vici ; vult parco, peperci,
Et parsi ; dico, dixi ; duco quoque duxi.

Co, ci.

Do fit di ; ut, mando, mandi : sed scindo, scidi, dat ; Do, di.
Findo, fidi ; fundo, fudi ; rundo, tutudique ;
Pendo, pependi ; tendo, tetendi ; pedo, pepédi ;
Junge cado, cecidi ; pro verbero cædo, cecidi ;
Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare cessi.
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,
Claudo, plaudo, rōdo, ex do, semper faciunt fi.

Go fit xi ; ut, jungo, junxi ; sed r ante go vult fi ; Go, xi.
Ut, spargo, sparsi ; lego, legi ; & ago facit egi :

tetigi, to touch; pingo to prick, make's punxi & pupugi; frango, fregi, to break; pango, pepigi, to make a bargain; pango pegi, to join; pango, panxi, to sing.

Hi, xi.

Ho is made xi; as, Traho, traxi, to draw; and veho, vexi, to carry.

Lo, vi.

Lo is made vi; as, Colo, colui, to till; but Psallo, to sing, and fallo, to salt, make falli: vello, to pluck up, make's velli and vulsi; fallo, to deceive, make's fefelli; cello to break, ceculi; and pello, to drive away, pepuli.

Mo, vi.

Mo is made vi; as, Vomo, vomui, to vomit: but emo, make's emi; to bite; como, compsi, to comb; promo, prompti, to draw; demo, dempsi, to take away; sumo, sumpsi, to take; premo, pressi, to press.

No, vi.

No is made vi; as, sino, sivi, to suffer. Except Temno, tempsti, to despise; sterno, stravi, to strew; sperno, spreui, to despise; lino, levi, lini, & livi to draw; cerno, creui, to discern. Gigno, make's genui, to beget; pono, posui, to put; cano, cecini, to sing.

Po, pfi.

Po is made pfi; as, scalpo, scalpsti, to scratch; rum-po, rupi, to break; strepo, strepui to make a noise; cre-do, crepui, to crack.

Quo, qui.

Quo is made qui; as, linquo, liqui, to leave. Except coquo, coxi, to boil.

Ro, vi.

Ro is made vi; as, sero, to plant or sow, make's sevi, which changing the signification, rather maketh serui; verro, to burn, verri, & versi; uror ussi, to burn; gero, gessi, to act, or bear; quero, quaesvi, to seek; tero, trivi, to wear; curro, cucurri, to run.

So, sivi.

So will make sivi; as, accerso, to go to call, arcesso to go to call, incesso, to revile, and lacezzo, sivi, to provoke. Except capezzo, to offer to take, which make's capezzi, & capestvi; facezzo, to go about to do, and viso, to visit, make's visi: but pinso, to bake, will have pinsui.

Sco, vi.

Sco is made vi; as pasco, pavi to feed; but posco, will have poposci, to require.

*Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique ;
Dat frango fregi, cum signat pango pacisci
Vult pepigi, pro jungo pegi, pro cano panxi.*

Ho fit xi, traho ceu traxi, docet & veho vxi.

Ho, xi.

*Lo fit ui, colo ceu colui : psallo excipe cum p
Et fallo sine p, nam falli format utrunque ;
Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli ;
Cello pro frango ceculi ; pello pepulique.*

Lo, ui.

*Mo fit ui, vomo ceu vomui : sed emo facit emi,
Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adice demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi, premo pressi.*

Mo, ui.

*No fit vi, fino ceu fivi, temno excipe tempfi,
Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,
Interdum lini & livi ; cerno quoque crevi :
Gigno, pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini, dant.*

No, vi.

*Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpsi, runpo excipe rupi,
Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dat.*

Pso, psi.

Quo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi.

Quo, qui.

*Ro fit vi, sero ceu pro planto & semino sevi,
Quod serui melius dat mutans significatum.
Vult verro verri & versi, uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quero quæfivi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.*

Ro, vi.

*So, velut accerso, arcesso, incesso, atque lacezzo,
Formabit fivi : sed tolle capesso capepsi,
Quodque capeffivi facit, atque facezzo facepsi,
Sic viso visi, sed pinso pinsui habebit.*

So, fivi.

Scro fit vi, ut pasco pavi ; vult posco poposci ;

Scro, vi.

Disco, didici, to learn, and quinsco, quexi, to nod with the head.

To, ti.

To is made *ti*; as, *verto, verti, to turn*; *Sisto, Stiti, to make to stand*; but *mitto, make's missi, to send*; *peto, will form petivi, to ask*; *sterto, stertui, to snore*; *meto, messui, to mow*.

Esto, exi.

Esto is made *exi*; as, *flecto, flexi, to bend*; but *pecto, to comb, make's pexi, and pexui*; and *necto, to knit, nexi, and nexui*.

Vo, vi.

Vo is made *vi*; as, *volvo, volvi, to roll over*; *Excep vivo, vixi, to live. Nexo, make's nexui to knit*; and *texo, texui, to weave*.

Xo, xui.

Cio, ci.

Cio is made *ci*; as, *facio feci, to make*; *jacio, ieci, to cast*; but *lacio, to allure, make's lexi*; and *specio, to behold, spexi*.

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

Pio, pi.

Dio is made *di*; as, *fodio, to dig, make's fodi*.

Gio is made *gi*; as, *fugio, fugi, to avoid*.

Pio is made *pi*; as, *capio cepi, to take*: *Except cupio cupivi, to desire*; and *rapio rapui, to snatch*; and *sapio sapui, or sapivi, to be wise*.

Rio, ri.

Tio, sti.

Rio is made *ri*; as, *pario peperi, to bring forth*.

Tio is made *sti*; as, *quatio quassi, to shake*; which *Preterperfect tens* is seldom used.

Uo, ui.

Uo is made *ui*; as, *statuo statui, to appoint*; but *pluo, to rain, make's pluvi, and plui*; *struo struxi, to build*; *fluo, fluxi, to flow*.

In the Fourth is make's *ui*.

IV. **T**HE fourth Conjugation make's *is* in the present tens, and *ivi* in the preterperfect tens; as, *scio scis scivi, to know*. *Except venio veni, to come; cambio campsi, to exchange*; *taucio tauisi, to be hoarse*; *farcio farsii, to stuff*; *sarcio sarsii, to patch*; *seprio sepsii, to hedge*; *sensio sensi, to perceive*; *fulcio fulsi, to underprop*; *haurio haurii, to draw*; *sancio sanxi, to establish*; *vincio vinxi, to bind*; *salio salui, to leap*, and *amicio amitui, to cloath*. Wee seldom use, *Cam-bivi, haurivi, amicivi, &c.*

Chap.

Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.

*To fit ti ; ut, verto verti, sed sisto notetur
Pro facio stare Affivum, nam jure stiti dat.
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.
Sterto stertui habet, meto messui. Ab ecto fit exi;
Ut, flecto flexi ; pecto dat pexui, habetque
Pexi ; etiam necto dat nexui, habet quoque nexi.*

To, ti.

Ecto, exi.

*Vo fit vi ; ut, volvo volvi ; vivo excipe vixi.
Nexo ut nexui habet, sic texo texui habebit.*

*Vo, vi,
Xo, xui.*

*Fit cio, ci ; ut facio feci, jacio quoque jeci ;
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.*

Cio, ci,

Fit dio, di ; ut fodio fodi. Gio, ceu fugio gi.

*Dio, di,
Gio, gi.*

*Fit pio, pi ; ut capio cepi, cupio excipe pivi ;
Etrapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.*

Pio, pi.

*Fit rio, ri ; ut pario peperi. Tio ssi geminans f ;
Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.*

*Rio, ri.
Tio, ssi.*

*Denique uo, fit ui ; ut statuo statui ; pluo plui
Format sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

Mo, ui.

IV. **Q**uarta dat is, ivi ; ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi ; In Quarta
Excipias venio dans veni, cambio campsi,
Raucio rausi, farcio farfi, sarcio sarfi.
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi ;
Haurio item hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi.
Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amicui dat.
Parcius utemur cambivi, haurivi, amicivi,
Sepivi, sanxivi, sarcivi, atque salivi.

*is format
ivi.*

Chap. 32. Of the Preterperfect tenses of Compound Verbs.

The Simple and Compound verbs have the same Preterperfect tense.

Except,
1. Words that double the first syllable,
2. *Plico*.

The Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tense; as, *Docui*, **I have taught**; *edocui*, **I have fully taught**. but

1. The syllable which the Simple verb doubleth, is not alwaies doubled in the Compound, except in these three, *præcurro*, **to run before**; *excurro*, **to run out**; and *repungo* **to pick again**; and in the Compounds of *Do* **to give**; *disco* **to learn**; *sto* **to stand**; and *posco* **to require**.

2. *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *plicavi*; as, *supplico*, **to supplie**; *multiplico*, **to multiply**; but *applico*, **to applie**; *complico*, **to fold up**; *replico*, **to repite**, will end in *ui*, or *avi*.

3. *Oleo*.

3. Though *Oleo*, **to smell**, make's *olui*, yet its compounds make rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo*, **to smell strong**, and *suboleo*, **to smell a little**, are formed like the simple Verb.

4. *Pungo*.

4. All the compounds of *Pungo*, **to pick**, make *punxi*; but *repungo*, **to pick again**, make's *repupugi*, and *repunxi*.

5. *Do*, & *Sto*.

5. The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *didi*; as *Credo*, **to believe**; *edo*, **to set forth**; *dedo*, **to yield**; *reddo*, **to restore**; *perdo*, **to be strove**; *abdo*, **to hide**; *obdo*, **to set against**; *condo*, **to build**; *indo*, **to put in**; *trado*, **to deliver**; *prodo*, **to betray**; *vendo*, **to sell**: But *Abfcondo*, **to hide**, make's *Abfcondi*.

The Compounds of *Sto*, **to stand**, make *stiti*.

6. Verbs changing the first vowel into *e*.

6. These Simple Verbs beeing compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into *e*, viz.

Damna,

Cap. 32. De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

PRæteritum dat idem Simplex & Compositivum ;
Ut docui edocui monstrat : 1. Sed syllaba semper

Quam simplex geminat, compositio non geminatur ;

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo :

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, ritè creatis.

2. *A plico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista,
 Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi ;
 Applico, complico, replico, & explico, ui vel in avi.*

3. *Quamvis vult oleo simplex olui, tamen inde
 Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi :
 Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur suboletque.*

4. *Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi,
 Vult unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.*

5. *Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo,
 Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,
 Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi ; at unum
 Abscondo, abscondi. Natum à sto, stas, stiti, habebit.*

6. *Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
 Si componantur vocalem primam in c mutant ;*

Simplex &
 Compositum idem
 habent
 Præteri-
 tum.
 Excipe,
 1. Geminantia pri-
 mam syllaba-
 bam.

2. Plico.

3. Oleo.

4. Pungo.

5. Do &
 Sto.

6. Mutantia
 primam vo-
 calem in c
 Damno, calem in e

6. Verbs
change the
first vowel
into e.

Damno, to condemn ; *laeto*, to give such ; *sacro*, to dedicate ; *salto*, to decet ; *arceo*, to drive away ; *tracto*, to handle ; *fatiscor*, to be weary ; *partio*, to divide ; *scando*, to climb ; *spargo*, to sprinkle ; and *pario*, to bring forth young, whereof two Compounds, *Comperio*, to find out by search, and *reperio*, to find by chance, do make *peri*, and all the rest *perui* ; as, *aperio* to open ; *operio*, to cover.

7. *Pasco*,

7. These two compounds of *Pasco*, viz. *compesco*, to pasture together, and *dispesco*, to drive from pasture, will have *pescui*, the rest will have *pavi* ; as, *epasco*, to eat up.

8. Verbs
that change
the first
vowel into
i.

8. These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into *i*, viz. *habeo*, to have ; *lateo*, to lie hid ; *salio*, to leap ; *statuo*, to appoint ; *cado*, to fall ; *ludo*, to hurt ; *pango pegi*, to join ; *cano*, to sing ; *quæro*, to seek ; *cado cecidi*, to beat ; *tango*, to touch ; *ego*, to want ; *teneo*, to hold ; *taceo*, to keep silence ; *sapio*, to be wise ; and *rapio*, to snatch ; as, *rapio rapui*, make's *eripio eripui* : but the Compounds of *Cano*, make the Preterperfect tens in *ui* ; as, *concino* to agree in one tune, *concinui*.

9. *Placeo*.

9. So of *Placeo* cometh *displaceo* to displease : but *complaceo* to like well, and *perplaceo* to please thoroughly ; do follow the simple Verb.

10. *Pango*.

10. These four Compounds of *pango* to join, do keep *a*, viz. *Depango* to fasten down ; *oppango* to fasten to ; *circumpango* to fasten about ; and *repango*, to disjoin.

11. *Maneo*.

11. These four Compounds of *Maneo* *mansi*, to tarry, do make *minui*, viz. *Pramineo*, to excel others ; *emineo*, to appear before others ; *promineo*, to hang out in sight, and *immineo*, to hang over : but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12. *Scalpo*,
ealco, *salto*,

12. The Compounds of *scalpo*, to scratch ; *ealco*, to tread ; *salto*, to dance, change *a* into *u* ; as, *exscalpo*,

Damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, parióque,
Cujus nata peri duo comperit & reperit dant ;
Cetera sed perui, velut hæc aperire, operire.

7. A pascó, pavi tantum compósta notentur
Hæc duo compesco, dispesco, pescui habere :
Cetera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.

7. Pasco.

8. Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, ludo,
Pango dans pegi, cano, quero, cædo, cecidi,
Tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapióque,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant ;
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui : à Cano natum,
Præteritum per ui, ceu concinò, concinui dat.

8. Mutantia
primam vo-
calem in i.

9. A placeo, sic displiceo ; sed simplicis usum
Hæc duo complaceo, cum perplaceo, bene servant.

9. Placeo.

10. Compósta à pango retinent a quatuor ista ;
Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

10. Pango.

11. A maneo mansi, minui dant quatuor ista,
Præminco, emineo, cum promineo, immincòque ;
Simplicis at verbi servabunt cetera formam,

11. Maneo.

12. Compósta à scalpo, calco, salto, a per u mutant ; 12. Scalpo,
Id calco, salto

po, to carb; inculco, to inculcate, and resulto, to rebound.

13. *Claudo*,
quatio, *lavo*

13. The Compounds of *Claudo* to shut, *quatio* to shake, *lavo* to wash, do cast away a; as, *occludo* to shut fast, *excludo* to shut out, of *claudio*. *Percutio* to smite, and *excutio* to shake off, of *quatio*. *Proluo*, is, *lui*, to wash much; *diluo*, is, *lui*, to purge with washing, of *lavo*.

14. Verbs
that change
the first
vowel of the
Present tens
into *i*, but
not of the
Preter tens.

14. These Verbs beeing compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tens (into *i*) but not of the Preterperfect tens, viz. *Ago* to do, *emo* to buse, *sedeo* to sit, *rego* to rule, *frango* to break, *capio*, to take, *jacio* to cast, *lacio* to allure, *specio* to behold, *premo*, to press: as of *frango* is made *refringo* *refregi* to break open; of *capio*, *incipio* *incepti* to begin; but *perago* to finish *satago* to be busy about a thing, *coëmo* to buse together, do follow their simple Verb. And of *ago*, *dego* to live, make's *degi*, and *cogo* to compel, *coëgi*: as also of *rego*, *pergo* to go forward, make's *perrexi*, and *surgo* to arise, *surrexi*, the middle syllable of the Present tens beeing taken away.

15. *Facio*.

15. *Facio* changereth nothing unless it have a Preposition before it; as, *Olfacio* to smell, *calfacio* to make hot, and *infacio* to infect.

16. *Lego*.

16. The compounds of *Lego*, with *re*, *se*, *per*, *pra*, *sub*, *trans*, keep the vowel of the Present tens, the rest change it into *i*; of which *Intelligo* to understand, *diligo* to love, *negligo* to neglect, make *lexi*, and all the rest make *legi*.

Id tibi demonstrant exsculpo, inculco, resulto.

13. *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a;*

13. *Claudo, quatio, lavo:*

Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo; à quatioque

Percutio, excutio; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

14. *Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

14. *Mutatio primam vocalem presentis in i, sed non præteriti.*

Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, semper

Vocalem primam presentis in i sibi mutant,

Præteriti nunquam, ceu frango, refringo refregi,

A capio, incipio incepti. Sed pauca notentur,

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, taragóque,

Atque ab ago dego dat degi, cogo coëgi;

A rego sic pergo perrexi, vult quoque surgo

Surrexi, mediâ presentis syllabâ ademptâ.

15. *Nil variat facio nisi præposito præeunte;*
Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficioque.

15. *Facio.*

16. *A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præeunte,*

16. *Lego.*

Presentis servant vocalem, in i cetera mutant;

De quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.

Chap. 33.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

The Supine
is formed
of the Pre-
ter tens,
Bi make's
sum.

Ci, sum.

Di, sum.

The syllabl
is not dou-
bled in the
Supines.

Gi, sum.

Li, sum.

Mi,
Ni,
Pi,
Qi, } sum.

Ri, sum.

Si, sum.

NOW learn to form the Supine from the Pre-
terperfect tens thus : *Bi*, maketh tum ; as, *Bibi*
bibitum to drink.

Ci is made *sum*, as *vici* *visum* to overcome, *ici*
ictum to smite, *feci* *factum* to do, *jeci* *jectum* to cast.

Di is made *sum*, as *vidi* *visum* to see : but som do
double *ss* ; as *pandi* *passum* to lay open, *sedi* *sessum* to
sit, *scidi* *scissum* to cut ; *fidi* *fissum* to cleave, *fodi* *fossum*
to dig.

And here also you may observ, that the syllable
which is doubled in the Preterperfect tens, is not
doubled in the Supines, as *torondi* to creep, make's *ton-*
sum ; *cecidi* to beat, *casum* ; *cecidi* to fall, *casum* ; *te-*
tendi to stretch, *tensum*, and *tentum* ; *tutudi* to knock,
tunsum ; *pepēdi* to fart, *peditum* : to which add *dedi* ;
which maketh *datum*.

Gi is made *sum*, as, *legi* to read, *lectum* ; *pegi* to
join, and *pepigi* to make a bargain, *pañum* ; *fregi* to
break, *fractum* ; *terigi* to touch, *tañum* ; *egi* to do, *actum* ;
pupugi to prick, *punctum*, and *fugi* to avoid *fugitum*.

Li is made *sum*, as *salli* to season with salt, *salsum* ;
pepuli to bite away, make's *pulsum* ; *ceculi* to break,
culsum ; *feselli* to deceive, *falsum* ; *velli* to pluck up,
vulsum, and *tuli* to suffer, *lathum*.

Mi, *ni*, *pi*, *qui*, are made *tum*, as *emi* *emptum* to buy,
veni *ventum* to come, *cecini* *cantum* to sing, *cepi* *captum* ;
to take, *cæpio* *cæptum* to begin, *rupi* *ruptum* to break,
liqui *lictum* to leave.

Ri is made *sum*, as *verri* *versum* to brush : except
peperi *partum* to bring forth.

Si is made *sum*, as *visi* *visum* to visit ; yet *missi* ma-
keth

Cap. 33.

De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

Nunc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.
 Bi sibi tum format, sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

Supinum
 formatur ex
 Præterito.
 Bi format
 tum.

Ci fit tum, ut vici victum, testatur & ici
 Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Ci, tum.

Di fit sum, ut vidi visum : quædam geminant ss,
 Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum ; adde scidi quod
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.

Di, sum.

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis,
 Quam vult Præteritum geminari, non geminatur :
 Idque totondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum, & cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
 Quod tensum & tentum, tutudi tunsum, atque pepédi
 Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure datum vult.

Syllaba non
 geminatur
 Supinis.

Gi fit tum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigi que
 Dat pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Gi, tum.

Li fit sum, ut salli stans pro sale condio falsum ;
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque fefelli
 Falsum ; dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque latum.

Li, sum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum fiunt, velut hic manifestum ;
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano, cantum ;
 A capio cepi dans captum, à cœpio cœptum,
 A rumpo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque lictum.

Mi,
 Ni,
 Pi,
 Qui } tum

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum ; peperer excipe partum.

Ri, sum.

Si fit sum, ut visi visum ; tamen s geminato,

Si, sum.
 Misi

keth *missum* to send, with a double *ss*: except *falsifultum* to underprop, *hausi haustum* to draw, *sarsi sartum* to patch, *sarsi sartum* to stuff, *ussi ustum* to burn, *gesti* *gestum* to bear, *torsi tortum* or *torsum* to twist, *indulsi* *indultum* or *indulsum* to pamper.

Psum.

Psi is made *tum*, as *scripsi scriptum* to write; except *campsi campsum*, to exchange.

Ti tum.

Ti is made *tum*, as *steti* to stand, and *stivi* to make to stand, make *statum*; except *verti versum* to turn.

Vi tum.

Vi is made *tum*, as *flavi flatum* to blow; except *paui pastum* to feed, *lavi lotum lautum* or *lavatum* to wash, *potavi potum* & *potatum* to drink, *favi faturum* to favour, *cavi cautum* to beware, *sevi satum* to sow, *livi* or *lini litum* to drow, *solvi solutum* to lose, *volvi volutum* to rowl, *singultivi singultum* to sob, *venivi venum* to bee sold, *sepelivi sepultum* to burie.

Ui tum, urum.

Ui make's *itum*, as *domui domitum* to tame: except everie verb in *uo*, becaus *ui* will alwaies make *utum*, as *exui exitum* to put off; but *ru* make's *ruitum* to rush; so *seui sectum* to cut, *necui nectum* to kill, *fricui frictum* to rub, *miscui mistum* to mingle, *amicui amictum* to clothe, *torrui tostum* to roast, *docui doctum* to teach, *tenui tentum* to hold, *consului consultum* to consult, *alui altum* or *alutum* to nourish, *salui saltum* to leap, *colui cultum* to worship, *occului occultum* to hide, *pisui pistum* to bake, *rapui raptum* to snatch, *serui sertum* to put to, *texui textum* to weav. But these change *ui* into *sum*, for *censeo* to think maketh *censum*, *cellui celsum* to break, *messui messum* to mow, *nexui nexum* to knit, *peui pexum*, to comb, *patui passum* to lie open, *carui cassum* & *caritum*, to swant.

Sum.

Xi etum.

Xi is made *sum*, as *vinxi victum* to binde: but five lose *n*, viz. *finxi fectum* to feign, *minxi mistum* to pise, *pinxi pictum* to paint, *strinxi strictum* to tie, *rinxi ritum* to grise.

And

Missi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum ;
 Hausi haustum, farsī sarrum, farsī quoque fartum,
 Ussi ustum, gessi gestum, torssi duo tortum
 Et torsum, indulsi indultum indulsūque requirit.

Psi fit tum, ut scripsi scriptum ; campsi excipe cam- Pfi, tum.
 (psum)

Ti fit tum, à sto namque steti, à sistōque stiti fit, Ti, tum.
 Præterito communē statum ; verti excipe versum.

Vi fit tum, ut flavi flatum, pavi excipe pastum ; Vi, tum.
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum.
 Potavi potum, interdum facit & potatum :
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum, à sero sevi
 Formes ritè satum ; livi, linique litum dat :
 Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum :
 Vult singultivi singultum, venio venis
 Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

(vis
 Quod dat ui dat itum, ut domui domitum, excipe quod-
 Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum, Vi, tum.
 Exui ut exutum, à ruo deme rui ruitum dans ;
 Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuique
 Fricum, miscui item mistum, ac amicui dat amictum :
 Torruī habet tostum, docuique doctum, tenuique
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitūque,
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului quoque cultum :
 Pinsui habet pistum, rapui raptum, seruique
 A sero vult sertum ; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed ui mutant in sum ; nam censeo censum, Sumi.
 Cellui habet celsum, meto messui habet quoque messum,
 Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum ;
 Dat patui passum, carui cassum caritūque.

Xi fit etum, ut vinxi victum, quinque abjiciunt n, Xi, tum.
 Nam finxi fictum, minxi mictum inque supino,
 Dat pinxi pictum, strinxi, rinxi quoque rictum.

And these *xi* into *xum*, *Flexi flexum* to bend, *plexi plexum* to punish, *fixi fixum* to fasten, *fluxi fluxum* to flow.

Chap. 34.

Of the Supines of Compound verbs and of the Preterperfect tens of verbs in *or*.

The Compound supine is formed like the Simple.

EVerie Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not alwaies the same syllable in both.

The compound of *tunsum* to knock, *n* beeing taken away, make's *tusum*, and of *ruitum* to rush, is made *ruitum*, *i* beeing taken away, and so of *saltum* to leap, is made *sultum*.

When *sero* maketh *satum*, its compounds make *fitum*.

These Supines *captum* to take, *factum* to do, *jectum* to cast, *raptum* to snatch, *cantum* to sing, *partum*, to bring forth, *sparsum* to sprinkle, *carptum* to crop and *factum* to stuff, change *a* into *e*.

The verb *edo* to eat, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, onely *comedo* to eat up maketh both.

Of *nosco* to know, *cognitum* to know, and *agnitum* to acknowledg, are onely used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noscitum* is of no use.

Verbs in *or* make their Preterperfect tens of the latter supine by putting to *s* and *sum* vel *fui*.

II. **V**erbs in *or* take their Preterperfect tens from the later Supine, by changing *u* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these verbs, somtimes a Deponent, somtimes a Commune is to bee noted; for *labor* to labe, make's *lapsus sum*, *patior* to suffer, make's *passus sum*, and its compounds *compatior* to suffer together, *compassus sum*, *perpetior*

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi dant, & fluo fluxum.

Cap. 34.

De Compositorum verborum Supinis, & De Præteritis verborum in or.

I. **C**ompositum ut Simplex formatur quotique Supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet semper syllaba utrique.
Composita à tuncsum, dempta n̄ culum, à ruitum fit
I media dempta rutum, & à saltum quoque sultum,
A sero quando satum format, composita fitum dant.
Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque fartum.
Verbum edo compositum non estum, sed facit esum;
Unum dunaxat comedo formabit utrunque.
A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur
Cætera dant notum nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

Compositum supinum formatur ut Simplex.

II. **V**erba in or admittunt ex posteriore Supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato
Vel fui, ut à lectu lectus sum vel fui. At horum
Nunc est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum,
Nam labor lapsus, patior dat passus & ejus
Nata ut compatior compassus, perpetiorque

Verba in or admittunt Præteritum ex posteriore relapsio;

perpetior to suffer throughly *perpeſſus ſum*, **fateor to confeſs**, make's *faſſus ſum*, and its compounds, as **confiteor to confeſs** *confeſſus ſum*, **diffiteor to denie**, *diffeſſus ſum*, **gradior to go by ſteps**, make's *greſſus ſum*, and ſo its compounds, as **digredior to digreſs**, *digreſſus ſum*, **fatifcor to bee ſwearie** make's *feſſus ſum*, **metior to meaſure** *meſſus ſum*, **utor to uſe** *uſus ſum*; **ordior to ſwear** make's *orditus*, **ordior to begin** *orſus*, **nitor to endeavour** *nitus* or *nixus ſum*, **ulciſcor to revenge** *ultus ſum*, **iraſcor to bee angrie** make's *iratus ſum*, **reor to ſuppoſe** *ratus ſum*, **obliviſcor to forget** *oblitus ſum*, **frwor to enjote** *fructus* or *fruitus ſum*, **miſereor to pittie** *miſertus ſum*; **tuor and tueor to ſee** make not *tutus* but *tuitus ſum*, though both have *tutum* and *tuitum* in the Supine; **loquor to ſpeak** make's *loquutus ſum*, **ſequor to follow** *ſequutus ſum*, **experior to trie** *expertus ſum*, **pacifcor to make a bargain** *paſtus ſum*, **nanciſcor to get** *naſtus ſum*, **apiſcor to get**, which is an old verb, make's *apius ſum*. whence **adapiſcor to obtain** *adeptus*, **queror to complain** *queſtus ſum*, **proſciſcor to go on a journie** *profeſtus ſum*, **expergiſcor to awake** *experrectus ſum*, **comminiſcor to ſeign** *commentus ſum*, **naſcor to bee born** *natus ſum*, **morior to die** *mortuus ſum*, **orior to ariſe** make's *ortus ſum*.

Chap. 35. Of certain verbs Irregular, or going out of the common rules of conjugating.

Verbs irregular are
1. Redundant, having a Pretertens of the Active and of the Passive voice:

THeſe verbs have a Preterperfect tenſ both of the Active and Paſſive voice, as **cæno to ſup** make's *cænavi* and *cænatus ſum*, **juro to ſwear** *juravi* and *juratus*, **potō to drink** *potavi* and *potus*, **titubo to ſtumble** *titubavi* or *titubatus*.

So

*Formans perpeſſus : fateor quod faſſus & indè
 Nata, ut confiteor confeſſus, diffiteorque
 Formans diſſeſſus : gradior dat greſſus, & indè
 Nata, ut digredior digreſſus. Junge fatiſcor
 Feſſus ſum, menſus ſum metior, utor & uſus.
 Pro te. x. orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orſus,
 Nitor niſus vel nixus ſum, ulciſcor & ultus.
 Iraſcor ſimul iratus, reor atque ratus ſum,
 Obliviſcor vult oblitus ſum ; fruor optat
 Fruſtus vel fruitus, miſereri junge miſertus.
 Vult tuor & tueor non tutus ſed tuitus ſum,
 Quamvis & tutum & tuitum ſit utrique Supinum.
 A loquor addè loquutus, & à ſequor addè ſequutus;
 Experiore facit expertus, formare paciſcor
 Gaudet pactus ſum, nanciſcor naſtus, apiſcor
 Quod vetus eſt verbum aptus ſum, undè adipiſcor ade-
 (ptus.
 Junge queror queſtus, proficiſcor junge profeſtus,
 Experiſcor ſum experrectus, & hæc quoque commi-
 Niſcor commentus, naſcor natus, moriorque
 Mortuus, atque orior quod Præteritum facit ortus.*

Cap. 35.

De verbis quibusdam Anomalis.

*Præteritum Activa & Paſſiva vocis habent hæc,
 Cœno cœnavi & cœnatus ſum tibi format,
 Juro juravi & juratus, potòque potavi ;
 Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.*

L 3

Verba Ano-
 mala ſunt
 1. Redun-
 dantia, Præ-
 teritum.
 Activa &
 Paſſiva vo-
 cis habenti-
 tia.

Sic

So also careo **to want** make's carui and catus sum, prandeo **to dine**, prandi, and pransus, pateo **to lie open** patui & passus, placeo **to please** placui and placitus, suesco **to accustom** suevi and suetus, veneo **to be sold** venivi and venditus sum, nubo **to be married to a man** nupsi and nupta sum, mereor **to deserve** merui and meritus sum: to these add, libet **it listeth** libuit and libitum est vel fuit, licet **it is lawful** licuit, and licitum est vel fuit, tædet **it irketh** tæduit, and pertasum est vel fuit, pudet **it ashamed** puduit, and puditum est vel fuit, and piget **it irketh** which make's piguit and pigitum est vel fuit.

2. Variant,
as Neuter-
passives.

and

Neuter-passives are thus formed: viz. like neuters in the present tense, and passives in the preter tense; Gaudeo **to rejoice** gavisus sum vel fui, fido **to trust** sisus sum vel fui, audeo **to be bold** ausus sum vel fui, fio **to be made of** don factus sum vel fui, soleo **to be wont** solitus sum vel fui, mereo **to be sad** mæstus sum vel fui, But PHO C A S taketh mæstus for a noun Adjective.

Such as borrow their Preterperfect tense,

Some verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from another verb; as a verb Inceptive ending in sco, standing for the primitive verb, will have the preterperfect tense of the primitive verb, thus; tepesco **to begin to be warm** make's tepui of tepeo **to be warm**, fervesco **to begin to be hot** make's fervei of serveo **to be hot**, cerno **to see** will have vidi of video **to see**, quatio **to shake** concussi of concutio **to shake**, ferio **to smite** percussi of percutio **to smite**, meio **to piss** will have minxi of mingo **to piss**, sideo **to settle** sedi of sedo **to sit**, tollo **to lift up** will have sustuli of suffero **to bear**, sum **I am** will have fui of fuo **to be**, fero **to bear** tuli of tulo **to bear**, sisto **to make to stand** steti of sto **to stand**, furo **to be mad** insanivi of insanio **to be mad**.

So

*Sic caſeo carui & caſſus ſum, prandeo prandi
Et pranſus, pateo parui & paſſus, placeoꝛque
Dat placui & placitus, ſueſco ſuevi atque ſuētus,
Veneo pro vendōr, venivi venditus & ſum,
Nubo nupſi nuptāque ſum, mereor meritus ſum
Vel merui. Adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde
Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit & dat
Pertæſum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditūmque,
Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitūmque.*

N *Eutro-paſſivum ſic præteritum tibi format,
Gaudeo gavifus ſum, fido fiſus, & audeo
Anſus ſum, fio factus, ſoleo ſolitus ſum,
Mœreo ſum mœſtus; ſed Phœca nomen habetur.*

2. Variantia
ut,
1. Neutro-
paſſiva.

&

Q *Uædam præteritum verba accipiunt aliunde.
Inceptivum in ſco, ſtans pro primario, adoptat
Præteritum ejuſdem verbi; vult ergo tepelco
A tepeo tepui, ſerveſco à ſerveo ſervi,
A video cerno vult vidi, à concutio vult
Præteritum quatio concuſſi, percutiōque
Percuſſi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi,
A ſedeo fido vult fedi, à ſuffero tollo
Suſtuli, & à ſuo ſum fui, à tulo ritè fero tuli,
A ſto fiſto ſteti, tantum pro ſtare; furōque
Inſanivi, à verbo ejuſdem ſignificati.*

2. Præteri-
tum mutu-
antia.

Sic

So also *vescor* to eat will have its preterperfect tens from *pascor* to bee fed, *medeor* to heal from *medicor* to heal, *liquor* to bee melted from *liquefio* to bee melted, *reminiscor* to remember from *recordor* to call to minde.

3. Defective
1. In the
Preter tens.

THese verbs want the preterperfect tens : *vergo* to bend or look towards, *ambigo* to doubt, *glisco* to grow or increase, *fatisco* to chink, *polleo* to bee able, *nideo* to shine : to these add *puerascor* to begin to bee a childe ; and passives whose actives want the Supines, as *metuor* to bee feared, *timeor* to bee feared ; and all Desideratives except *parturio* to stribe to bring forth, and *esurio* to begin to bee hungrie, or to desire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tens.

3. In the
Supine.

THese verbs seldom or never have the Supine : *Lambo* to lick, *mico* to shine, *rudo* to bzaie, *scabo* to claw, *parco* to spare, *dispesco* to bzibe from pasture, *posco* to require, *disco* to learn, *compesco* to pasture together, *quinisco* to nod, *dego* to live, *ango* to be, *sugo* to suck, *lingo* to lick, *ningo* to know, *fatago* to bee busie about a thing, *psallo* to sing, *volo* to will, *nolo* to bee unwilling, *malo* to bee more willing, *tremio* to tremble, *strideo* to make a nois, *strido* to make a nois, *flaveo* to bee yellow, *liveo* to bee black and blew, *aveo* to rober, *paveo* to fear, *conniveo* to wink, *serveo* to bee hot. The Compounds of *nuo* to nod, as *renuo* to refuse : the compounds of *cado* to fall, as *incido* to fall into ; Except *occido* to fall down *occasum*, and *recido* *reacasum* to fall back : *respuo* to refuse, *linguo* to leab, *luo* to punish, *metuo* to fear, *cluo* to glister, *frigeo* to bee cold, *caluo* to bee bald, *sterto* to snort, *timeo* to fear, *luceo* to shine, *arceo* to bzibe away, whose compounds make *ercitum* : the compounds of *gruo* to crie like a Crane, as *ingruo* to invade.

And

*Sic possunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor,
Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.*

P*ræteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,
Polleo, nideo, ad hæc Inceptiva, ut puerasco;*

3. Defectiva
1. Præteri-
to.

*Et passiva quibus caruere activa supinis,
Ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia præter
Parturio, esurio, quæ præteritum duo servant.*

H*æc raro, aut nunquam retinebunt verba Supinum,
Lambo, mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,*

2. Defectiva
Supinis.

*Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
Dego, ango, fugo, lingō, ningō, saragōque,
Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,
Flaveo, liveo, avert, paveo, conniveo, ferver;
A nuo compositum, ut renuo, à cado ut incido, præter
Occido quod facit occasum, recidōque recasum;
Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calvo,
Et steruo, timeo, sic luceo, & arceo, cuius
Composita erciturum habent: Sic à gruo, ut ingruo narum.*

Et

And all verbs Neuters of the second Conjugation that end in *ui*; except *oleo* to smell, *doleo* to grieve, *p'aceo* to please, *taceo* to hold one's peace, *pareo* to obey, *careo* to want, *noceo* to hurt, *pateo* to lie open, *lateo* to lie hid, *va'eo* to be able, *caleo* to be warm, which will have the Supines.

Chap. 36. Of verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.

3. In cer-
tain Moods
and tenses,
as,
Aio.

THese verbs (more usually) are called Defectives which want certain Moods and Tenses, viz.

Indicative Mood } *Aio* **I** *sale*, or quoth **I**; *Ais* thou
Present tens, } *sailest*; *Ait* *hee* *saith*, or quoth
hee, Plur. *Aiunt* *they* *sale*.

Imperfect. } *Aiebam* **I** *did* *sale*, hath all persons in
both numbers.

Imperativus, *Ai* *sale* *thou*?

Subjunct. } *Aias* *thou* *makest* *sale*, *Aiat* *hee* *may*
Present, } *sale*. Plur. *Aiamus* *wee* *may* *sale*,
Aiant, *they* *may* *sale*.

Participium Præsens, *Aiens* *saying*.

Ausim.

Subjunct } *Ausim* **I** *dare*, *Ausis* *thou* *darest*, *Ausit*
præsens. } *hee* *dare*. Plur. *Ausint* *they* *dare*.

Duim.

So also *Duim* **I** *give*, *Duis* *thou* *givest*, *Duit* *hee*
giveth. Plur. *Duint* *they* *give*.

For the Antients express the Subjunctive Mood in *im*, hence wee read *creduim* for *credam*.

Salve.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis* *thou* *shalt* *greet*, or *bid*
God *speed*.

Imperat. *Salve* *salveto* *greet* *you* *well*. Plur. *Salvete*
salvetote *greet* *pee* *well*.

Ave.

Infinitive, *Salvere* *to* *greet* *well*.

Imperative, *Ave* *Aveto* *hail* *thou*. Plur. *Avete* *A-*
vetote *hail* *pee*,

In-

Et quæcunq; in ui formantur neutra secundæ,
 Exceptis oleo, doleo, placeo, taceóque,
 Pareo, item & careo, noceo, pateo, lateóque.
 Et valeo, caleo ; gaudent hæc namque supino.

Cap. 33. De verbis qua deficiunt certis Modis & Temporibus.

VERBA (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur quæ 3. Certis
 certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, viz. Modis &
 Indicativus } Aio, ais, ait. Plur. Aiunt. Temporibus, ut,
 Præsens } Aia.

Imperfect. Aiebam, habet omnes personas.

Imperativus, Ai.

Subiunctivus } Aiam, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, Aiant.
 Præsens, }

Participium præsens, Aiens.

Subiunctivus } Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausint. Ausim.
 Præsens, }

Sic Duim, duis, duit. Plur. Duint. Duim.

Veteres enim Subiunctiva per *im* efferebant,
 unde creduim pro credam legimus.

Indicat. Futur. Salvebis. Salve.

Imperat. Salve, salueto. Plur. Salvete, salvetote.

Infinitivus, Salvete.

Imperativus, Ave, aveto. Plur. Avete, avetote. Ave.

In-

Infinit. *Avère*, to bid one *hast*.

Cedo.

Imperat. *Cedo* reach mee. Plur. *Cedite*, antiently *Cette* reach yee.

Faxo.

Indic. & Subjunct. Futur. *Faxo* vel *Faxim* I will bring to passe, *Faxis* thou wilt make, *Faxit* hee will make. Plur. *Faxint*, they will make.

Forem.

Subjunct. *Forem* I should, or might bee, *Fores* thou shouldst, or might bee, *Foret* hee should or might bee. Plur. *Forent* they might bee.

Infinit. Futur. *Fore* to bee.

Quaeso.

Indic. Præsens, *Quaeso*, I praye. Plur. *Quaesumus* wee praye.

Infir.

Defir.

Confieri.

Indic. Præsens, *Infir* hee saith. Plur. *Infunt* they sale. And *Defir* it is wanting, *Defiet* it will bee wanting, *Defiat* let it bee wanting, as also *desieri* to bee wanting, *Confieri* to bee don at once.

Inquam.

Indicat. Præsens, *Inquo* vel *Inquam*, I sale, *Inquis* thou saiest, *Inquit* hee saith. Plur. *Inquiunt* they sale.

Perfectum, *Inquisti* thou hast said, *Inquit*, hee hath said.

Futurum, *Inquies* thou shalt sale, *Inquiet* hee shall sale. Plur. *Inquietis* yee shall sale, *Inquient* they shall sale.

Imperat. *Inque*, *Inquito* sale thou.

Subjunct. præf. *Inquiat* hee may sale.

Particip. præfens, *Inquiens* saying.

Odi.

Cepi.

Memini.

Odi I hate, *cepi* I begin, *memini* I remember, have onely those tenses which are formed of the Pretertens, viz. those that end in *ram*, *rim*, *ssim*, *ro*, and *se*, save that *memini* hath in the Imperative mood singular *Memento* remember thou, *mementote* remember yee.

Dor.

For.

These simple verbs *For*, *dor*, *fer*, *der*, are not found in the first person singular of the Present tens, but (almost) in all the rest.

Dic, *duc*, *fer*, *fac*, are cut off by Apocope.

Sci

Infinitivus, *Avere*.

Imperativus, *Cedo*. Plur. *Cedite*, & apud Antiquos *Cedo*.
Cette.

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fut. *Faxim* vel *faxo*, *faxis*, *Faxo*,
faxit. Plur. *Faxint*.

Subjunct. *Forem*, *fores*, *foret*. Plur. *forent*.

Forum.

Infinit. Futur. *Fore*.

Indicat. præsens, *Quæso*. Plur. *Quæsumus*.

Quæso.

Indicat. præsens, *Infit*. Plur. *Infiunt*. Et *Defit*, *de-*
fiet, *defiat*, ut item *desieri* & *confieri*.
Infit:
Defit:
Confieri.

Indicat, præsens, *Inquo* vel *inquam*, *inquis*, *inquit*. *Inquam*.
Plur. *Inquiunt*.

Perfectum, *Inquisti*, *inquit*.

Futurum, *Inquies*, *inquiet*.

Imperat. *Inque*, *inquito*.

Subjunct. præsens, *Inquiat*.

Participium. *Inquiens*.

Odi, *cæpi*, *memini*, habent ea solùm tempora quæ à o. d. præterito formantur; viz. in *ram*, *rim*, *sem*, *ro*, *Cæpi*. & *se* desinentia. Sed *memini* habet in imperativo singulari, *memento*. Plur. *mementote*. *Memini*.

Dor, *for*, *der*, *fer*, simplicium non reperiuntur in primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (ferè) omnibus. *Dor*. *For*.

Dic, *duc*, *fer* *fac*, per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

Sci

Sci.

Sci of scio **to know** is not in use, nor solebo of soleo **to bee wont**, nor suo **to bee**, an old verb.

Eo & queo.

Eo **I go**, and queo **I am able**, make their Preter-imperfect tens *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*.

Orior.

Morior.

Orior **to arise**, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive mood, and *morior* **maketh** *mori* and *moriri*.

Volo.

Nolo.

Malo.

Fero.

Fero.

Edo.

Volo **I will**, nolo **I will not**, malo **I had rather**, fero **I bear**, feror **I am born**, and edo **to eat**, have commonly a Syncope in manie tenses; as Volo, *vis*, *vult*. Vultis. Nolo, *nonvis*, *nonvult*. Nolumus. Malo, *mavis*, *mauvult*. Malumus. Fero, *fers*, *fert*. Feror, *ferris* vel *ferre*, *fertur*. Edo, *edis* vel *es*, *edit* vel *est*, &c. of which volo and malo want the Imperative mood. Nolo make's in the Imperative mood *Noli* **do not thou**. plur. *Nolite* **do not ye**.

Sum.

Sum with its compounds want's the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tens, save that *absens*, *presens* com of *absum*, *presum*; for *futurus* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tens of the obsolete verb *suo*. Possum want's the Imperative mood.

Sci à *scio* non reperitur, nec *solebo* à *soleo*, nec *Sci*.
suo antiquum.

Eo & *queo* habent imperfectum *ibam* & *quibam*, & *Eo*, & *queo*,
futurum *ibo* & *quibo*.

Orior *oreris* habet Infinitum *oriri*, sic & *morior* *mo-* *Orior*,
ri & *moriri*. *Morior*.

Volo, *nolo*, *malo*, *fero*, *feror*, *edo* Syncopen ferè ad- *Volo*.
mittunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo*, *vis*, *vult*, *Nolo*.
Vultis. *Nolo*, non *vis*, non *vult*, *Nolumus*. *Malo*, *mavis*, *Mala*.
mavult, *Malumus*. *Fero*, *fers*, *fert*. *Feror*, *ferris* vel *fer-* *Fero*.
re, *fertur*. *Edo*, *edis* vel *es*, *edit* vel *ess*, &c. ex quibus *Edo*.
volo & *malo* carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Imperativo
Noli *nolito*. Plur. *Nolite* *nolitote*.

Sum cum compositis caret gerundiis, Supinis, & *Sum*,
participo præfenti, nisi quod ab *absum*, *præsum*, *Veni-*
unt *absens*, *præfens*, nam *futurus* est à *fui*, quod præteri-
tum olim obsoleti verbi *suo*. *Possun* caret Imperativo.

Cap.

Chap. 32. Of Forming the verb Sum.

The verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belongs onely to its self.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi postulat.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1 <i>Sum, possum,</i>	I am.
		2 <i>Es,</i>	thou art.
		3 <i>Est,</i>	hee is.
	Plur.	1 <i>Sumus,</i>	wee are.
		2 <i>Estis,</i>	ye are.
		3 <i>Sunt.</i>	they are.

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1 <i>Sim, Possim,</i>	I am.
		2 <i>Sis,</i>	thou art.
		3 <i>Sit,</i>	hee is.
	Plur.	1 <i>Simus,</i>	wee are.
		2 <i>Sitis,</i>	ye are.
		3 <i>Sint.</i>	they are.

Imperfect.	Sing.	1 <i>Eram, poteram,</i>	I was.
		2 <i>Eras,</i>	thou wast.
		3 <i>Erat,</i>	hee was.
	Plur.	1 <i>Eramus,</i>	wee were.
		2 <i>Eritis,</i>	ye were.
		3 <i>Erant.</i>	they were.

Imperfect.	Sing.	1 <i>Essem, possem</i>	I was.
		2 <i>Esset,</i>	thou wert.
		3 <i>Esset,</i>	hee was.
	Plur.	1 <i>Essemus,</i>	wee were.
		2 <i>Essetis,</i>	ye were.
		3 <i>Esset.</i>	they were.

Perfect tense.	Sing.	1 <i>Fui, Potui,</i>	I have
		2 <i>Fuisti,</i>	thou hast
		3 <i>Fuit,</i>	hee hath
	Plur.	1 <i>Fuimus,</i>	wee have
		2 <i>Fuistis,</i>	ye have
		3 <i>Fuerunt,</i>	they have

Perfect tense.	Sing.	1 <i>Fuerim, potue-</i>	I have
		2 <i>Fueris, (rim,</i>	thou hast
		3 <i>Fuerit,</i>	hee hath
	Plur.	1 <i>Fuerimus,</i>	wee have
		2 <i>Fueritis,</i>	ye have
		3 <i>Fuerint.</i>	they have

Pluperplup.	Sing.	1 Fueram, po- (cueram)	I had	been	cum	Fuissem, potu- (issem)	I had	been
		2 Fueras,	thou hadst				thou hadst	
Plur.	Sing.	3 Fui at,	hee had	been	cum	Fuisset, Fuisset, Fuissemus, Fuissetis, Fuissetis.	hee had	been
		1 Fui amus,	allee had				allee had	
Plur.	Sing.	2 Fuerat,	pee had	been	cum	Fuissetis, Fuissetis, Fuissetis.	pee had	been
		3 Fueraut.	they had				they had	

Future.	Sing.	1 Ero, Pote	thou shalt	be	cum	Fuero, potue- Fuero, (ro, Fueris,	I shall	be
		2 Eris, (ro,	I shall				thou shalt	
Plur.	Sing.	3 Erit,	hee shall	be	cum	Fueris, Fueris, Fueris.	hee shall	be
		1 Firimus,	allee shall				allee shall	
Plur.	Sing.	2 Erimus,	pee shall	be	cum	Fuerimus, Fuerimus, Fuerimus.	pee shall	be
		3 Eruut.	they shall				they shall	

The Imperative Mood.

The Infinitive Mood.

Present tens.	Sing.	2 Sis, es, esto,	Bee thou	Present and Imperfect.	Esse, to bee.
		3 Sis, esto,	bee bee.		
Plur.	Sing.	1 Simus,	Bee wee.	Perfect and Pluperplup.	Fuisse, to have or had been.
		2 Sitis, este, estote,	bee pee.		
Plur.	Sing.	3 Sinit, sunto,	bee they.	Future	Futurum esse to bee here, after.

So likewise are its compounds declined, *Absum* to bee absent, *Desum* to bee wanting, *Presum* to bee before, *Obsum* to bee against; but *Prosum* to pro-
fit, take's d between two vowels, and *Possum* to bee able, (of *potis* able, and *sum* to bee) sometimes keep's t, and sometimes changeth it into s before f.

Sic variantur & ejus com-
posita, *Absum*, *desum*, *presum*,
obsum; *prosum* recipit d inter
duas vocales, & *Possum* (à
potis & *sum*) quandoque re-
tinet t, quandoque mutat
in s ante f.

Cap. 38.

Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals be declined in the third person only.

Impersonals be declined throughout all Moods and tenses in the voice of the third person singular only.

- And they be either
1. Of the Active voice which end in *t*; as *Decet it becommeth*, *decebat*, *deceuit*, *decuerat*, *decebit*, *Deceat*, *deceret*, *decuerit*, *decere*.
 2. Of the passive voice, which end in *tur*; as, *Studetur it is studied*, *studebatur*, *studitum est vel fuit*, *studitum erat vel fuerat*, *studebitur*, *studeatur*, *studeretur*, *studitum sit vel fuerit*, *studitum esset vel fuisset*, *studitum erit vel fuerit*, *studeri*.

And they be of the Active voice.

Impersonals want (for the most part) Gerunds, Supines, and Participles.

The Participles by which wee express the preter tens are put Substantively in the Neuter gender.

Impersonals of the Active voice are these eleven, which (almost) alwaies remain Impersonals; viz. *Decet it becommeth*, *Libet it listeth*, *Licet it is lawfull*, *Liquet it is cleer*, (whose Preter tens is not exstant) *lubet it listeth*, *miseret it pitieth*, *oportet it behooveth*, *penitet it repenteth*, *piget it irketh*, *pudet it ashameth*, and *taedet it irketh*, which are also sometimes found in the third person plural, as *decent*, *oportent*, *pudent*.

To these are reckoned som personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them). Such are,

In the first Conjugation, *delectat it delighteth*, *juvat it helpeth*, *praestat it is better*, *restat it remaineth*, *stat*; it is resolved on, *constat*, it is manifest, *vacat* I am at leisure.

In

Cap. 38.

De Impersonalibus & Defectivis.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

Sunt autem duplicia,

1. Activæ vocis, quæ in *r* desinunt, ut *decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, decuerit, decuisse, decuerit, decere.*
2. Passivæ vocis quæ in *tur* desinunt, ut *Studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studitum erat vel fuerat, studebitur, Studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studitum esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis & Participiis plerunque carent.

Sunt autem Activæ vocis.

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper ferè manent Impersonalia, viz. *Decet, libet, licet, liquet*, (cujus non exstat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, pœnitet, piget, pudet, tædet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut *decent, oportent, pudent.*

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertia persona absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo). Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvat, præstat, restat, stat, constat, vacat.*

In the Second, *apparet* it appeareth, *attinet* it be-
longeth, *debet* it ought, *patet* it is evident, *placet* it
pleaseth, *solet* it is wont.

In the Third, *Accidit*, it befalleth, *cœpit* it begin-
neth, *conducit* it belongeth to, *contingit* it hapneth, *de-
finit* it ceaseth, *incipit* it beginneth, *sufficit* it suffi-
ceth.

In the Fourth, *Convenit* it agree'th, *evenit* it fall's
out, *expedit* it is expedient.

Among the irregular verbs, *est* it is, *interest* it con-
cerneth, *prodest* it doth profit, *poteſt* it may, *ſit* it is
don, *reſert* it concepneth.

Likewiſe verbs of an exempt power (i. e. that
ſignifie an action not of anie humane power) com
near the nature of Impersonals, as *Fulgurat* it light-
neth, *pluit* it raineth, *luceſcit* it ſheweth light.

2. Impersonals of the Paſſive voice have no certain
number, becauſe they com of all verbs Actives, and ſom
Neuters, as, *Legitur* it is read, *curritur* it is run.

Laſtly no verb (almoſt) is ſo far a perſonal,
as that it cannot take upon it the form of an
Impersonal; and ſom Impersonals turn again ſom-
times into Perſonals.

A verb Impersonal may indifferently bee taken
to bee of anie perſon in both numbers, viz. by rea-
ſon of an oblique caſe adjoined; as, *me oportet* I
muſt, *te oportet* thou muſt, *illum oportet* hee muſt. *Opor-
tet nos*, wee muſt, *oportet vos* yee muſt, *oportet illos* they
muſt. *Statut à me* I ſtand, *ſtatut à te* thou ſtandeſt,
ſtatut ab illo hee ſtandeth. *Statut à nobis* wee ſtand.
ſtatut à vobis yee ſtand, *ſtatut ab illis* they ſtand.

Verbs De-
rivatives are

Derivative verbs are verie often uſed for their
Primitives, as *Timeſco* for *timeo* to fear, *hiſco* for *hi*
to gape.

1. Inchoa-
tives.

There bee five kindes of Derivatives, verbs.

1. Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which ſignifie
begin-

In Secunda, Apparet, attinet, debet, patet, placet, solet.

In Tertia, Accidit, cœpit, conducit, contingit, desinit, incipit, sufficit.

In Quarta, Convenit, evenit, expedit.

Inter anomala, est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo accedunt verba exemptæ potestatis, viz. actionem significantia non humanæ potestatis, ut *Fulgurat, pluit, luceſcit, &c.*

2. Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non habent, quia fiunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & quibusdam neutris, ut *Legitur, curritur.* Vel
2. Passivæ
vocis.

Denique nullum ferè verbum est tam personale, ut non idem impersonalis formam possit induere, atque nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant aliquando in Personalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz, ex vi adjecti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	{	me, te, illum,	}	Oportet	{	nos, vos, illos.	}
Statutur	{	à me, à te, ab illo.	}	Statutur	{	à nobis, à vobis, ab illis.	}

Derivativa sæpiſſime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut *Timeſco* pro *timeo*, *hiſco* pro *hio*. Derivativa
ſunt

Derivatorum quinque ſunt genera.

1. Inchoativa ſive Augmentativa, quæ inchoativa, 1. Inchoativa.

beginning or augmentation, and end in *fco*; as, *Lucesco* to begin to bee light, *Ardesco* to bee hotter and hotter.

2. Frequentatives.

2. *Frequentatives*, which signifie a certain assidue or endeavor; and end in *to*, *so*, *xo*, or *tor*; as, *Visito* to visit often, *Viso* to go to see, *nexo* to tie often, *seſtor* to endeavor to follow.

3. Desideratives.

3. *Desideratives*, or *Meditatives* which signifie a certain desire or strife, and end in *urio*; as, *Lecturio* to strive to read, *caenaturio* to desire a supper.

4. Diminutives.

4. *Diminutives*, which signifie the lessening of its Primitive, and end in *lo* or *ſſo*; as, *Sorbillo* to sup often, *pitillo* to supple or sup a little.

5. Imitatives.

5. *Imitatives*, which signifie imitation, and end in *isso*, and in *or*; as, *Patrisso* to resemble a father, *vulpinor* to plate the fox.

6. Apparatives.

6. Hitherto belong also *Apparatives*, which signifie a preparation to, and end in *co*; as, *Vellico* to pluck, *ſodico* to dig.

7. Denominatives.

7. As also *Denominatives*, which com from nouns, and have no proper appellation; as, *Lignor* to purvey wood, *rusticor* to live in the Countrey.

Chap. 39. Of a Participle.

A Participle taketh part of a Noun and part of a Verb. There bee four kindes of Participles.



PARTICIPLE is a part of Speech derived of a Verb, which taketh part of a Noun as well as of Verb; as *Amans* loving.

A Participle hath from a Noun, gender, case, and declension; from a Verb, tens and signification; from both these, number, and figure.

According to tens there bee four kindes of Participles.

1. Of the Present tens.

1. A Participle of the Present tens hath the signification of the Present tens, and endeth in *ans*, *ens*, and *iens*; as, *Amans*, *docens*, *legens*, *audiens*.

But

inchoationem aut augmentationem significant, & in
sco desinunt; ut, *Lucesco, ardesco.*

2. *Frequentativa*, quæ assiduitatem quandam vel
conatum significant, & in *to, so, xo, aut tor* desinunt;
ut, *Visito, viso, nexo, sector.* 2. Frequentativa.

3. *Desiderativa* sive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam
quandam, aut studium significant, & desinunt in *tiva*.
urio; ut, *Lecturio, cœnatorio.* 3. Desiderativa.

4. *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem sui Primitivi
significant, & desinunt in *lo, vel sso, ut, Sorbillo,*
pitisso. 4. Diminutiva.

5. *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem significant, & de-
sinunt in *isso & or*; ut, *Patrisso, vulpinor.* 5. Imitativa.

6. Huc pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus signi-
ficant, & in *co* desinunt; ut, *Vellico, fodico.* 6. Apparativa.

7. Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt, &
propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *lignor,*
rusticor. Denominativa.

Cap. 39. De Participio.

PARTICIPIUM est pars Orationis à
Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quàm à
Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans.* Participi-
um partem
capit à No-
mine, &
Verbo.
*Participium habet genera, casus, & de-
clinationem à nomine; tempora & significa-
tionem à Verbo; numerum & figuram ab utroque.*

Secundùm tempus species Participiorum sunt qua-
tuor. Species Par-
ticipiorum
sunt qua-
tuor.

1. Participium *Præsentis*, habet significationem
præsentis, & definit in *ans, ens, & iens*; ut, *Amans,*
docens, legens, audiens. 1. Præsentis.

But *iens* of *eo* is seldom read in the Nominative case, but *euntis* &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*; except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2. Of the Preter tens. 2. A Participle of the Preter tens signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as *Amatus* **loved**, *visus* **seen**, *nexus* **knt**; and one in *uus*, as *Mortuus* **Dead**.

3. Of the Future in *tus*.

3. A Participle of the future in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tens of its Infinitive mood Active; as, *Amaturus* **to love**, *Docturus* **about to teach**.

4. Of the Future in *dus*.

4. A Participle of the Future in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tens of the Infinitive Passive; as, *Amandus* **to be loved hereafter**.

How Participles are formed.

The Participle of the Present tens is formed of the Preterimperfect tens by changing the last syllable into *ns*; as of *Amabam*, *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tens is formed of the later Supine by putting to *s*; as of *Amatu*, *amatus*.

The participle of the Future in *tus* is formed of the later Supine by putting to *tus*; as of *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

The participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the participle of the Present tens by changing *tis* into *dus*; as of *Amantis*, *amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs besides the common rule; *Pariturus* **about to bring forth**, *nasciturus* **to be born**, *soniturus* **to sound**, *arguiturus* **to reprove**, *moriturus* **to die**, *luciturus* **that shall pale or suffer punishment**, *nosciturus* **to know**, *osurus* **to hate**, *futurus* **to be**, *oriturus* **to arise**.

These be like participles but are derived of Nouns, *Tunicatus* **coated**, *togatus* **gowned**, *personatus* **personated**, *larvatus* **masked**, &c.

From

Cæterùm *iens*, ab eo raro legitur in Nominativo, sed *euntis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita verò Nominativum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *antis*, præter *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2. Participium *Præteriti*, significat tempus præteritum, & definit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *visus*, *nectus*, & unicum in *uus*, ut, *mortuus*. 2. Præteriti.

3. Participium *Futuri in Rus* habet significationem præsentis Infiniti sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *doctus*. 3. Futuri in *rus*.

4. Participium *Futuri in Dus*, significationem habet Infiniti sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*. 4. Futuri in *dus*.

Participium Præsens formatur ab imperfecto mutando ultimam syllabam in *ns*; ut ab *Amabam* *amans*.

Participium Præteriti formatur à posteriori Supino addendo *s*; ut ab *Amatu* *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori Supino addendo *rus*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*. De modo Participia formandi.

Participium Futuri in *Dus* formatur à Genitivo participii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut ab *Aman-tis* *amandus*.

Hæc participia præter Analogiam à verbis suis deducuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguiturus*, *moriturus*, *luiturus*, *nosciturus*, *osurus*, *futurus*, *orturus*.

Tunicatus, *togatus*, *personatus*, *larvatus*: &c. similia participiis sunt, à nominibus verò deducuntur.

Of what
verbs they
com,

From Actives and Neuters which have the Supines com two Participles, one of the present tens, and the other of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amo*, *amans* *amaturus*, of *Curro*, *currentes* *cursurus*.

But of som Neuters are found also Participles in *dus*, as *Dubitandus* **to bee doubted**, *vigilandus* **to bee watched**, *carendus* **to bee wanted**, *dolendus* **to bee grieved**. And of these which make their preterperfect tens in manner of passives, is made also a participle of the preter tens; as *gaudeo* *gavissus* **glad**; *juro* *juratus* **sworn**: so likewise from Impersonals in *tur*; as of *Aratur* *aratus* **plowed**.

Of Verbs Passives com two participles, one of the preter tens, the other of the Future in *dus*; as of *Amor* cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponent com three participles, viz. of the present tens, preter tens, and of the Future in *rus*, as of *Auxilior* **to aid** cometh *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

To manie also belongeth a participle in *dus*, especially to such as govern an Accusative case, as of *Loquor* **to speak**, cometh *Loquens*, *loquuturus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

Of Verbs Commune com four participles, as of *Largior* **to bestow or bee bestowed**, cometh *Largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

There bee no participles exstant from verbs Impersonals, except *Pœnitens* **repenting**, *decens* **be-coming**, *libens* & *lubens* **willing**, *pertasus* **irking**, *pœnitendus* **to bee repented**, *pudens* **shaming**, *pudendus* **to bee ashamed**, *pigendus* **to bee irked**.

Nouns Par-
ticipials.

Participles are turned into nouns Participials.

1. When they govern another case then their verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunie* **loving of monie**.
2. When they are compounded with words which their verbs will not bee compounded withal; as,

Infans

Ab Activis & Neutris quæ habent Supina, veniunt duo participia, unum Præsentis, alterum Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, à *Curro*, *currens*, *cursurus*. Et à quibus verbis derivantur.

A quibusdam verò neutris reperiuntur etiam participia in *rus*; ut *Dubitandus*, *vigilandus*, *carendus*, *dolendus*. Et ab iis quæ præteritum faciunt more passivorum formatur etiam participium præteriti; ut, *Gaudeo gavissus*, *juro juratus*: sic ab Impersonalibus in *tur*; ut ab *Aratur*, *aratus*.

A Passivis veniunt duo participia Præteriti & Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Amor*, *amatus*, *amandus*.

A Deponentibus veniunt tria participia, Præsentis, Præteriti, & Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Auxilior*, *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

Multis accidit etiam participium in *rus*, præcipuè Accusativum regentibus; ut à *Loquor*, *loquens*, *loquutus*, *rus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

A Communibus veniunt quatuor participia, ut à *Largior*, *largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

Ab Impersonalibus nulla exstant participia præter *Pœnitens*, *decens*, *libens*, *lubens*, *pertasus*, *pœnitendus*, *pu-dens*, *pu-dendus*, *pigendus*.

Participia degenerant in nomina Participialia.

1. Cùm alium casum quàm suum verbum, regunt, ut *Amans pecunia*.

2. Cùm componuntur cum dictionibus, cum quibus ipsorum verba componi non possunt, ut

Nomina
Participia
lia.

Infans

Infans an infant, *Indolens* unskilful.

3. When they bee compared ; as, *Amans* loving.
Amantior more loving, *Amantissimus* verie loving.

4. When they signifie no time ; as, *Sapiens* wise,
Sponsa a bride.

Participles of the Present tense verie often becom Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender ; as, *Oriens* the East : sometimes of the Feminine ; as, *Consonans* a Consonant : sometimes of the Neuter ; as, *Accidens* an accident : sometimes of the Common of three ; as, *Appetens* greedie of.

Participles
of the Pre-
sent tense be
declined
like *Felix*,
of other
tenses like
Bonus,

Participles of the Present tense are declined with three Articles ; as, *Hic, hac, & hoc* *Amans*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with three terminations ; as, *Amatus, ta, tum* ; *Amaturus, ra, rum*, *Amandus, da, dum*, like *Bonus*.

Chap. 40 Of an Adverb.

v.
An Adverb
explaineth
a Verb.

AN ADVERB is a part of Speech added to other words (but especially to the Verb) to declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are manie, whose varieties must bee gathered out of the Circumstances of the Verbs.

According

Infans, indoctus.

3. Cùm comparantur ; ut, *Amans, amantior, amantissimus.*

4. Cùm tempus non significat ; ut, *Sapiens, sponsa.*

Participia præsentis temporis non rarò fiunt Substantiva, modò masculini generis ; ut, *Oriens* : modò scæminini ; ut, *Consonans* : modò neutrius ; ut, *Accidens* : modò communis ; ut, *Appetens.*

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis ; ut, *Hic, hæc, & hoc Amans*, sicut *Felix.*

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus terminationibus ; *Amatus, ta, tum ; Amaturus, ra, rum ; Amandus, da, dum*, sicut *Bonus.*

Participia
Præsentis
variantur
sicut *Felix.*
Reliquorum
temporum
sicut *Bonus.*

Cap. 40. De Adverbio.

ADVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè Verbis) ad sensum & significationem earum perficiendum & explanandum.

V.
Adverbium
explanat
Verbum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum varietas ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda est.

Secundùm

There bee
33 kindes
of Adverbs.

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

Place,
and
signi-
fiche

In a Place; as, *Hic here, Illic there.*
To a Place; as, *Huc hither, Illuc thither.*
From a Place; as, *Hinc hence, Illinc thence.*
By a Place; as, *Hac this waie, Illac that waie.*

Time; as, *Nunc now, tunc then, bodie to date; usque until, or as far as,* is both of Time and Place.

Number; as, *Semel once, bis twice, ter thrice, iterum again.*

Order; as, *Indè after that, deniq; lastly, demũ lastly.*

Asking; as, *Cur why, quare wherefore, unde whence.*

Calling; as, *Heus ho, ò eho so ho.*

Affirming; as, *Certè truly, nã truly, professò scilicet yes.*

Denying; as, *Non not, haud not, minimè no.*

Swearing; as, *Pol by Apollo, adipol by Apollo's temple, hercle by Hercules.*

Exhorting; as, *Agè go to, sodes if you dare, saltis if you will.*

Granting; as, *Licet it may bee so, essò bee it so, sit sanè bee it indeed so.*

Forbidding; as, *Nè not, non not.*

Flattering; as, *Amabò prethee.*

Wishing; as, *Utinam would to God, ò si O that.*

Gathering together; as, *Simul together, unà in one, pariter alike.*

Parting; as, *Seorsim severally, gregatim by flocks, bifariam two waies.*

Choosing; as, *Potius rather, imò yea rather, satius better.*

Excluding; as, *Tantum onely, modò onely, solum onely.*

Including or denying onely; as, *Non modò not onely, non solum not onely, nedum much less.*

Diver-

Secundum eorum significationem quædam dicuntur Adverbia

Loci
eaque
In Loco ; ut, *Hic, illic.*
Ad Locum ; ut, *Huc, illuc.*
A Loco ; ut, *Hinc, illinc.*
Per Locum ; ut, *Hac, illac.*

Temporis ; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie ; usque* Temporis
& Loci est.

Numeri ; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis ; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*

Interrogandi ; ut, *Cur ? quare ? unde ?*

Vocandi ; ut, *Heus, ô, eho.*

Affirmandi ; ut, *Certè, na, profectò, scilicet.*

Negandi ; ut, *Non, haud, minimè.*

Jurandi ; ut, *Pol, adipol, hercle.*

Hortandi ; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùtis.*

Concedendi ; ut, *licèt, estò, sit-sanè.*

Prohibendi ; ut, *Nè, non.*

Adulandi ; ut, *Amabò.*

Optandi ; ut, *Utinam, ô si.*

Congregandi ; ut, *Simul, unà, pariter.*

Segregandi ; ut, *Seorsim, gregatim, bifariam.*

Eligendi ; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi ; ut, *Tantum, modò, solum.*

Includendi, sive negatæ solitudinis ; ut, *Non mo-
dò, non solum, nedum.*

A

Diver-

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

V Diversitie ; as, *Aliter otherwise, secus otherwise.*
 Propinquitie or Nearness ; as, *Obviàm meeting,*
præsto at hand.

Intending or Increasing ; as, *Valdè very, nimis too, funditus utterly, omnino altogether.*

Remitting or diminishing ; as, *Vix scarce, agrè hardly, paulatim by little and little, pedetentim foot by foot.*

Restraining ; as, *Quatenus as far as, quoad as much concerneth, in-quantum in as much as.*
 Of a thing not finished ; as, *Penè almost, ferme in a manner.*

Explaining ; as *Putà suppose, utpote as, nimirum to wit, id est that is, videlicet to wit, quasi dicat as if one should say.*

Doubting ; as, *Forsan perhaps, forsitan perhaps so, fortassis if it be so.*

Chance ; as, *Fortè as it fall's out, fortuito by chance, fortè-fortunà by fortune.*

Shewing ; as, *En lo, ecce behold, sic thus, ita so.*

Likeness ; as, *Sic so, sicut as, ceu as, tanquam as, ita as.*

Quantitie ; as, *Parùm a little, minimè very little, satis enough, abunde in abundance.*

Qualitie ; as, *Bene well, malè ill, and such as end in e, and com of Adjectives of three terminations; as, Doctè learnedly, Pulcrè beavely ; also such as end in er, and com of Adjectives of three Articles ; as, graviter heavily, feliciter happily.*

[Comparing ; as, *Tam as well, quàm as, minùs less, aequè as well as, magis atque rather then.*

Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared like Adjectives, and differ onely in termination ; as, *Doctè learnedly, doctius more learnedly, doctissimè most learnedly ; fortiter strongly, fortius more strongly, fortissimè most strongly.*
 Like-

V Diversitatis ; ut, *Aliter, secus.*

Propinquitatis ; ut, *Obviâ, præstò.*

Intendendi ; ut, *Valdè, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi ; ut, *Vix, agrè, paulatim, pederentim.*

Restringendi ; ut, *Quatenusquoad, in-quantùm.*

Rei non peractæ ; ut, *Penè, ferme.*

Explanandi ; ut, *Putà, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id est) vîz. (videlicet) q. d. (quasi dicat).*

Dubitandi ; ut, *Forsan, forsitan, fortassis.*

Eventus ; ut, *Fortè, fortuito, fortè fortunâ.*

Demonstrandi ; ut, *En, ecce, sic, ità.*

Similitudinis ; ut, *Sic, sicut, ceu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis ; ut, *Parùm, minimè, satis, abunde.*

Qualitatis ; ut, *Bene, malè, & quæ in e desinunt ab Adjectivis trium terminationum; ut, Doctè; pulchrè; item in er ab Adjectivis trium Articulorum ; ut, Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi ; ut, *Tàm, quàm, minùs, æquè, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adjectivis derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur, sed solâ terminatione differunt ; ut, *Doctè, doctius, doctissimè; fortiter, fortius, fortissimè.*

Likewise *Bene* well, *melius* better, *optime* very well; *Sæpe* often, *sæpius* more often, *sæpissime* very often; *nuper* lately, *nuperime* very lately. with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender, take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Recens* for *recenter* newly, *Toruum* for *toruè* frowningly.

Chap. 41. Of a Conjunction.

VI.
A Conjunction conjoineth words and sentences. Its kinds according to signification are 17.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which fitly joineth words and sentences together.

- According to their signification some be
- Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *neque* nor.
 - Suspensives, which staie the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *tum* both, *et* both, *vel* either, *neque* neither.
 - Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple the words; as, *Aut* or, *sive* or, *vel* or.
 - Causals, which give the reason of the former sentence; as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.
 - Discretives, which make a difference; as, *Sed* but, *verò* but, *at* but.
 - Conditionals, which implice a condition; as, *Si* if, *sin* but if, *nisi* except, *dum* so that.
 - Exceptives, which except some thing; as, *Ni* unless, *nisi* except, *quin* but, *alioquin* otherwise.
 - Interrogatives, which ask a question; as, *Nè* whether, *an* whether, *utrum* whether.
 - Dubitatives, which propound a doubt; as, *An* whether or no, *num* whether or no, *nunquid* what.
 - Rationals, or Illatives, which infer the conclusion

Similiter & Bene, melius, optime; sepe, sapius, sapissimè; nuper, nuperrimè, cum paucis aliis.

Aliquando Neutra Adiectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, Recens, pro recenter; Torvum pro torvè.

Cap. 41. De Conjunctione.

CONJUNCTIO est pars Orationis, quæ voces & sententias aptè connectit.

VI.

Conjunctio
voces &
sententias
conjungit.
Species: jux
quoad signi-
ficationem
sunt 17.

quoad potestatem five significationem Conjunctionum aliz sunt

Copulativæ, quæ & sensum & verba copulant; ut, Et, que, nec.

Suspensivæ, quæ orationem suspendunt five aliud expectari faciunt; ut, Cum, tum, Et, vel, geminatæ.

Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba verò copulant; ut, Aut, five, vel.

Causales, quæ causam reddunt superioris sententiæ; ut, Nam, enim, quia.

Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt; ut, Sed, verò, at, ast.

Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant; ut, Si, sin, nisi, dum.

Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid excipiunt; ut, Ni, nisi, quin, alioquin.

Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant; ut, Nè, an, utrum.

Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant; ut, An, num, numquid.

Rationales, five Illativæ, quæ ex ratione pro-

According to their signification some be

sion from the reason set down; as, *Ergò therefore, ideo therefore, itaque therefore.*

Continuatives, which continue the members of a speech in order; as, *Deinde after, porro further, proinde thereupon, insuper moreover.*

Concessives, or Adversatives, which grant somewhat which the following sentence may oppose; as *Etsi although, quanquam although, licet though, tametsi although, quamvis although.*

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence divers from the former; as *Tamen yet, attamen but yet, verum but, veruntamen yet notwithstanding.*

Electives, which shew the former member of the sentence to be preferred; as, *Quàm as, ac as, atque as.*

Diminutives, which lessen the sense; as, *saltem at least, vel even.*

Expletives, or Completives, which fill up a sentence for ornament's sake; as, *Quidem indeed, autem and, scilicet sooth, enim vero truly.*

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive, which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs; as, *Quando when, or seeing that, proinde therefore, or then.*

According to its Order four.

According to their Order some be

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences; as, *Nam so, quare, wherefore, at but.*

Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause; as, *Quidem indeed, quoque also, verò indeed, enim so.*

Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after; as, *Ergò therefore, igitur therefore, itaque therefore, sed but.*

En-

Quoad potestatem five significationem Conjunctionum aliz sunt

posita conclusionem inferunt ; ut, *Ergò, ideo, itaque.*

Continuativæ, quæ membra orationis ordine continuant ; ut, *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper.*

Concessivæ, five Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt cui posterior sententia adversetur ; ut, *Et si, quanquam, licet, tamen si, quamvis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relatæ diversam sententiam superiori reddunt ; ut, *Tamen, at tamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præferri ; ut, *Quàm, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum ; ut, *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatûs gratiâ sententiam complent ; ut, *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enimvero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel Adverbia conjunctiva, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur ; ut, *Quando, proinde.*

Quoad Ordine sunt

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur ; ut, *Nam, quare, at.*

Subjunctivæ, five Postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant ; ut, *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & postponi possunt ; ut, *Ergò, igitur, itaque, sed.*

Quoad Ordinem quatuor.

* Enclitics, or Inclinations, which are annexed to the former word, and incline or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it ; as, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Chap. 42. Of a Preposition.

VII.
A Preposition is set before other words,
There bee 54 Prepositions, some of which are
1 Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words,
either { Apposition ; as, *Ad scholam* to the school.
in { Composition ; as, *Advenio* to com to.

Prepositions are either { 1. Separable.
Or,
2. Inseparable.

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition ; of whose regiment wee shall treat, LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

For thirtie one of these govern an Accusative case, viz.

Ad to.
Apud at.
Adversus } against.
Adversum }
Ante before.
Cis } on this side.
Citra }
Circum } about.
Circa }
Circiter }
Contra against.

Erga towards.
Extra without.
Infra below.
Inter between.
Intra within.
Juxta by.
Ob for.
Penes in the power.
Per by.
Pone behinds.
Post after.

Præter besides.
Propter because of.
Secundum according to.
Secus by.
Supra above.
Trans beyond.
Versus towards.
Ultra beyond.

Which some have comprised in these four Verses.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, intra,
Ultra

Encliticae five Inclinativae, quae affixae praecedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Cap. 43. De Praepositione.

PRAEPOSITIO est pars Orationis quae aliis vocibus praepositur,

vel in { Appositione; ut, *Ad Scholam.*
Compositione; ut, *Advenio.*

Praepositiones sunt vel { 1. Separabiles.
Sive
2. Inseparabiles.

1. Separabiles sunt, quae & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus,

LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

Ex his enim triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad.</i>	<i>Erga.</i>	<i>Prater.</i>
<i>Apud.</i>	<i>Extra.</i>	<i>Prope.</i>
{ <i>Adversus.</i>	<i>Infra.</i>	<i>Propter.</i>
{ <i>Adversum.</i>	<i>Inter.</i>	<i>Secundum.</i>
<i>Ante</i>	<i>Intra.</i>	<i>Secus.</i>
<i>Cis.</i>	<i>Juxta.</i>	<i>Supra.</i>
<i>Citra.</i>	<i>Ob.</i>	<i>Trans.</i>
<i>Circum.</i>	<i>Penes.</i>	<i>Versus.</i>
<i>Circa.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	<i>Ultra.</i>
<i>Circiter.</i>	<i>Pone.</i>	
<i>Contra.</i>	<i>Post.</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor versibus complectuntur.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, utans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
N 4. Ultra,

VII.
Praepositio
aliis voci-
bus praepo-
nitur.
Praepositio-
nes sunt 54.
Quarum
alii sunt,
1. Separabi-
les,

Ultra, post, prater, propter, prae, pond, secundum,
Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intra,
 And twelv govern an Ablative case, viz. *A*, ab, abs,
 from; absque without, coram before, cum with, de, &
 ex of, pra before, pro for, sine without.

Five govern both these cases; viz. *Clam* pssibly,
 in in, sub, & subter under, super above; onely *tenu*
 up to, will have an Ablative case singular, and Ge-
 nitive plural.

3. Others Inseparable Prepositions are such as are never
 found without Composition, viz.

<i>Am,</i>	} as	{	<i>Ambio</i> , to go about.		<i>Re,</i>	}	<i>Recipio</i> to receive.
<i>Di,</i>			<i>Diduco</i> , to go aside.		<i>Se,</i>		<i>Sepono</i> to set aside.
<i>Dis,</i>			<i>Distrabo</i> , to distract		<i>Con,</i>		<i>Convivo</i> to live toge-
					<i>Ve,</i>		<i>Vesanus</i> outrageous.

The signification of Prepositions is not so much
 to bee learned by rules, as by daily use of reading
 and writing.

Som Prepositions are wont to bee set after their
 cases; viz. *Cum*, as *quibuscum* with whom; *tenu*, as
pube tenu up to the chin; *versus*, as *Londinum versus*
 towards London; to which *usque* may bee added,
 as *ad Orientem usque* as far as the East.

Prepositions when they bee put without a case
 becom Adverbs; as, *Coram* laudare, *clam* vituperare,
 to pass one in presence, and dispass pssibly.

Som Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions ac-
 cording to their several signification are judged som-
 times Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and sometimes
 Conjunctions.

Som Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Com-
 parative and Superlative degree, as in Chap. 17. 12.

VIII.

An Interje-
 ction is put
 in amongst
 other words.

Chap. 43. Of an Interjection.

AN Interjection is a part of Speech interposed
 among others, which signifieth a passion of the
 minde suddenly breaking forth. There

*Ultra, post, prater, propter, propè, ponè, secundùm,
Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intrâ.*

Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, absque, coram, cum, de, è, ex, præ, pro, sine.*

Quinque serviunt utrisque casui; *Clam, in, sub, subter, super*; unicum *tenus* gaudet Ablativo singulari, & Genitivo plurali.

2. Inseparabiles sunt, quæ nunquam extra Compositionem inveniuntur.

2. Aliæ Inseparabiles.

<i>Am,</i>	} ut,	{	<i>Ambio.</i>		<i>Re,</i>	} ut,	{	<i>Recipio.</i>
<i>Di,</i>			<i>Diduco.</i>		<i>Se,</i>			<i>Sepono.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>			<i>Distirabo.</i>		<i>Con,</i>			<i>Convivo.</i>
					<i>Ve,</i>			<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi solent; viz. *Cum*, ut *quibuscum*; *tenus*, ut *pube tenus*; *versus*, ut *Londinum versus*: quibus addi potest *usque*, ut *ad Orientem usque*.

Præpositiones cum sine casu ponuntur fiunt Adverbia; ut, *Coram laudare, clam vituperare*.

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præpositionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modò Præpositiones censerì possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Comparativi & Superlat. gradûs, ut videre est, Cap. 17. l. 2.

Cap. 34. De Interjectione.

Interjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat.

VIII.
Interjectio
ceteris partibus orationis interjicitur.

Tot citur.

There bee so manie Interjections then as there
 are motions of a troubled minde, viz. of
 Rejoicing ; as, *Evax hey brave, vah how, io o fine.*
 Sorrowing ; as, *Heu alas, hei, hei welladay, ô, oh ah.*
 Dreading ; as, *Atat out alas.*
 Marvelling ; as, *Papa O strange !*
 Disdaining ; as, *Hem oh, vah away with it.*
 Shunning ; as, *Apaga abant, apagite bee gon.*
 Calling ; as, *Eho, how, ho, io so ho.*
 Praising ; as, *Euge wel don, eja oha.*
 Scorning ; as, *Hui whee.*
 Exclaiming ; as, *Proh O.*
 Cursing ; as, *Malum a mischief, va malum soo with
 a mischief.*
 Disliking ; as, *Phy out upon it.*
 Threatning ; as, *Va soo.*
 Laughing ; as, *Ha, ha, he.*
 Silence ; as, *Au 't, whitte, Pax peace.*

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put
 into a Speech in manner of Interjections ; as, *Infan-
 dikm not to bee spoken, Amabò of all lobes, or as
 thou lovest mee, Malum a mischief, mirabile diffu
 wonderful to bee said. &c.*

Tot igitur sunt Interjectiones, quor sunt animi
perrurbati motus, viz.

Exultantis ; ut *Evax, vah, io.*

Dolentis ; ut, *Hen, hei, hei, oh, ah.*

Timentis ; ut, *Atat.*

Admirantis ; ut, *Papa.*

Indignantis ; ut, *Hem, vah.*

Virantis ; ut, *Apaga, apagite.*

Vocantis ; ut, *Ebo, ho, io.*

Laudantis ; ut, *Euge, eja.*

Deridentis ; ut, *Hui.*

Exclamantis ; ut, *Oh, prob.*

Imprecantis ; ut, *Malum, va malum.*

Fastidientis ; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis ; ut, *Va,*

Ridentis ; ut, *Ha, he, he.*

Silentium orationi injungentis ; ut, *Au, 'B, pax.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & aliæ voces interjici-
untur more Interjectionum ; ut, *Infandum, amabo,*
malum, mirabile dictu, &c.

LIB. III.

O F S Y N T A X.

Syntax
teacheth the
due joining
of words, &
By rules,

SYNTAX, or Construction, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joining of words together.

And that is the due joining of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There bee two parts
of Syntax,

{ Concordance, CHAP. I.
&
Government, CHAP. 2.

Chap. I. Of Concordance.

I. OF CON-
CORDANCE.

Concordance is the construction of words according to their agreement in som of the things that belong unto them.

There bee three
Concords, { *The first* between the Nominative
case and the Verb. §. I.
The second between the Substan-
tive and the Adjective. §. II.
The third between the Anteced-
ent and the Relative. §. III.
To which may
bee added { Of the case of the Relative. §. IV.
the Rules { Of the word that asketh, and the
word that answereth to the ques-
tion. §. V.

§. I. The



LIB. III.

DE SYNTAXI.

SYNTAXIS, sive Constructio, est tertia pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Orationis inter se Compositionem docet. Syntaxis
debitam
partium
Orationis
Compositi-
onem docet.
Per Regu-
las
Ea verò est debita Compositio, quâ veterum probatissimi, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt usi.

Syntaxeos partes duæ sunt, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Concordantia.} \\ \text{\&} \\ \text{Regimen.} \end{array} \right.$ CAP. I.
CAP. 2.

Cap. I. De Concordantiâ.

Concordantiâ est dictionum constructio secundum r. Concor-
dearum in accidentibus quibusdam convenien-
tiam. dantiâ.

Sunt autem Con-
cordantiæ tres, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Prima inter Nominativum \&} \\ \text{Verbum. §. I.} \\ \text{Secunda inter Substantivum \&} \\ \text{Adjectivum. §. II.} \\ \text{Tertia inter Antecedens \& Re-} \\ \text{lativum. §. III.} \end{array} \right.$
Quibus adjun-
gi possunt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{De casu Relativi. §. IV.} \\ \text{De Interrogativo \& Redditi-} \\ \text{Regulæ vo. §. V.} \end{array} \right.$

§. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

A Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative[“]
case in Number and Person ; as,

The Master readeth, and yee neglect.

Whil'st the cat sleepeth, the mice dance.

1. *Obs.* The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom set down ; as,
Without God (wee) can do nothing.

1. *Exc.* Unless it bee for differencing sake, i. e. when wee signifie several employments ; as,

Thou plaieſt, I ply my book.

2. *Exc.* Or for Emphasis sake, i. e. when wee mean more then wee ſpeak expreſſly ; as,

Thou art our Patron, thou art our Father, if thou forſakeſt us, wee are undone.

2. *Obs.* The Verb Subſtantive is very often underſtood ; as, *There (is) no ſafetie in War.*

Such a Maſter, ſuch a man.

3. *Obs.* Oft-times other Verbs (alſo) are underſtood ; as, *(* To prick out) the raven's eyes.*

The ſow (+ will return) to the mire.

§. II. The Rule of the ſecond Concord.

The Adjective agreeth with its Subſtantive in[“]
caſe, gender, and number ; as,

True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and verie like to a black ſwan.

An haſtie bitch bringeth forth blinde whelps.

1. *Obs.* An Adjective put like a Subſtantive doth ſupply the place of a Subſtantive ; as,

A learned poor man is better then an unlearned rich man.

All evil things are to bee avoided.

A good man is a common good.

§. III.

§. I. Regula primæ Concordantiæ.

Verbum Personale cohzret cum Nominativo⁴⁶
 Numero & personâ ; ut,
Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.
Dum felis dormit, saliant mures.

1. *Obs.* Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissimè exprimitur ; ut,
 Absque Deo nihil possumus.

1. *Exc.* Nisi causâ discretionis ; viz. cùm diversa studia significamus.
Tu ludis, ego studeo.

2 *Exc.* Aut Emphasis gratiâ ; viz. cùm plûs significamus, quàm expressè dicimus ; ut,
Tu es patronus, tu pater, si deseris tu, perimus.

2. *Obs.* Verbum Substantivum sæpissime subauditur,
 ut, *Nulla salus bello.*
Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.

3. *Obs.* Sæpe reticentur & alia verba ; ut,
Cornici oculum. (* configere)
Sus ad lutum. († redibit)

§. II. Regula secundæ Concordantiæ.

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero,⁴⁶
 & casu consentit ; ut,
Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno
Vera fides.

Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos.

1. *Obs.* Adjectivum Substantivè positum supplet locum Substantivi ; ut,

Doctus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.

Omnia mala sunt fugienda.

Vir bonus est commune bonum.

§. III.

§. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

3. The third.

THE Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,
The man is wise that speaketh few words.
The first hour that gave life, took from it.
The burden is made light, which is well born.

N. B. The Antecedent (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent bee called *Supposites*, because in Concordance they bee (as it were) put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by som are called *Apposites*) and bear them up. hence

1. *Obs.* In speeches which belong onely to men, the Supposite is often understood; as,

Thus (*men*) say commonly.

Good (*boies*) learn diligently.

A good (*woman*) com of good parents.

Hee) that maketh too much hast, dispatcheth too late.

(*Things*) which hurt us teach us.

2. *Obs.* Sometimes a whole claus, a member of a sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, do supplie the place of Supposites; as,

To-have-faithfully-learned-the-Liberal-Arts, doth qualifie men's manners.

To-rise-early is verie wholesom.

Part of the ensigns are burnt.

I-came-in-season, which is the chieftest of all things.

Farewel beeing often said, I again spake manie words.

3. *Obs.*

§. III. Regula tertiæ Concordantiæ.

„**R**elativum(*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat 3. Tertiæ.
 „**R**egulare, numero, & personâ ; ut,
Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.
Prima, quæ vitam dedit, hora carpsit.
Leve fit, quod bene fertur onus.

N. B. *Antecedens* (serè) est dictio quæ Relativum antecedit, & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicuntur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo, & Relativo in Concordantia (quæ etiam à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant : hinc

1. *Obs.* In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum pertinent Suppositum sæpe subauditur ; ut,

Sic vulgò dicunt.

Boni discunt seduli.

Bona bonis prognata.

Qui nimium properat, serius absolvit.

Quæ nocent, docent.

2. *Obs.* Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, verbum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut dictio pro se posita, supplent locum Suppositorum ; ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores.

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Partim signorum sunt combusta.

In-tempore-veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.

Sæpe vale dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.

3. *Obs.*

3. *Obs.* The Supposite sometimes agreeth with the Verb, or Adjective, or Relative in sens rather then words, as ;

*A companie rusth. Both are deluded, or mocked.
An armed Nation fight.*

Where is that rogue that hath undon mee?

4. *Obs.* A Verb, Adjective, or Relative set between two Suppositives of divers numbers or genders may agree with either of them. as.

The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

Povertie seemed a great burden.

A living-creature full of reason, whom wee call a man.

A bird which is called a sparrow.

The Citie Lutetia which wee call Paris.

5. *Obs.* Many Suppositives Singular having a Conjunction Copulative between them, wil have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthie supposite : as.

I and thou, who plie our books diligently are in safetie.

Thou and hee, who sit so negligent, take heed you bee not whipt.

N. B. The worthiness of a Supposite $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Gender ;} \\ \text{or,} \\ 2 \text{ Person.} \end{array} \right.$ is considered according to its

1 The first Person is more worthie then the Second, or third, & the second more worthie then the third.

2. The Masculine Gender is more worthie then the Feminine, or Neuter ; and the feminine is more worthie then the Neuter.

Excep. But in things not apparent to have life the Neuter Gender is more worthie, as,

The Bows and the Arrows are good.

Thy rod and thy staff, (these) have comforted mee.

6. *Obs.* When the Verb or Adjective answereth to manie suppositives it agreeth expressly with that which is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it, as,

Thou

3. *Obs.* Suppositum quandoque cum Verbo, vel Adjectivo, vel Relativo sensum magis quàm voce convenit, ut,

Turba ruunt. Vterque deluduntur.

Gens armati pugnant.

Ubi illic scelus est qui me perdidit?

4. *Obs.* Verbum, Adjectivum, aut Relativum inter duo supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

Amantium ira amoris redintegratio est.

Paupertas visum est magnum onus.

Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.

Avis (qui vel) quæ passer appellatur.

Urbs Lutetia (quam vel) quos Parisios dicimus.

5. *Obs.* Plura Supposita singularia per Connexionem copulata sæpe Verbum, vel Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito digniore quadrabunt; ut,

Ego & tu, qui studemus seduli, sumus in tuto.

Tu atque ille, qui sedetis tam supini, cavete ne vapuletis.

N. B. Suppositi dignitas $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Genus.} \\ \text{aut,} \\ 2. \text{ Personam.} \end{array} \right.$

spectatur secundum

1. Dignior enim est persona prima quàm secunda, aut tertia, & dignior secunda quàm tertia.

2. Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quàm fœmininum, aut neutrum, & dignius fœmininum quàm neutrum.

Ex. At in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhibetur tanquam dignius; ut,

Arcus & calami sunt bona.

Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.

6. *Obs.* Cùm Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis responderet, cum viciniore convenit expressè, cum reliquis per supplementum; ut,

*Thou liest where I (lie,) thou suppest when wee (sup).
The husband and the wife is angrie.*

Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness,
the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Supposite
which is further from it ; as,

I write better then thou (wriest).

God's law is sweet, as bonie (is sweet).

7. *Obs.* A Pronoun Primitive seem's to bee included or understood in a Possessive, and therefore the Relative or Adjective do oft agree with such a Primitive ; as,

It concerneth not mee, who am the eldest.

Seeing no bodie readeth my writings fearing to recite them publickly.

§. 1 V The Rule concerning the case of the Relative.

To which
add,

4. The case
of the Re-
lative.

When there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall bee the Nominative case to the Verb; as,

Hee that bewareth not afore, shall bee sorrie afterward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear.

Hee may easily finde a stick, who desire's to beat a dog.

„ But if there doth com a Nominative case between
„ the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall bee
„ governed of the Verb, or of som other word in the
same sentence ; as,

*Oft-times thou maist conquer by patience, whom
thou canst not conquer by force.*

*If (thou) canst not do what (thou) wouldst ; will
that, which (thou) maiest do.*

Whose shadow I reverence.

Like to whom I have not seen.

1. Obs.

Cubas ubi ego, cœnas quando nos.

1. *Maritus & uxor est irata.*

Exc. Attamen quando est comparatio vel similitudo, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cum remotiore Supposito; ut,

Ego meliùs, quàm tu, scribo.

Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.

7. Obs. Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintelligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant; ut,

Nil meâ refert, qui sum natu maximus.

Scripta cùm mea nemo legat, vulgò recitare timentis.

§. IV. Regula de casu Relativi.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interferitur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus; ut,

Quibus ad-
das,

4. De casu
Relativi.

Qui antè non cavet, pòst dolebit.

Quod rarum charum.

Facile inveniat baculum qui capit cadere canem.

At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione in eadem oratione; ut,

Sæpe vincas patientiâ quem non vincas impetu.

Si non potes quod vis, id velis quod possis.

Cujus umbram veneror.

Cui similem non vidi.

1. *Obs.* As the Relative may bee the Nominative case to the Verb, so it may bee the Substantive to an Adjective ; as,

Hee *that* rejoiceth at other men's evils is twice wretched.

Happie is hee , *whom* other men's harms make warie.

2. *Obs.* Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites do follow the rule of the Relative, which evermore go before the Verb, like as the Relative doth ; as,

What an one *was* hee ? *Hee was* such an one as I never saw.

§. V. The rule of the Question and Answer.

§. Of the
Question
and Answer,

When a question is asked , the answer must be made by the same case and tens that the question is asked by ; as,

What do yee ? *Wee* plie our books.

Who is rich ? Hee *that* desireth nothing. *Who* is poor ? The covetous man. *What* is now adoring in England ? *They* consult about Religion.

1. *Obs.* This rule faileth when the divers nature of words requireth divers cases ; viz.

1. When a question is made by *Cujus*, *ja*, *jum* ; as,
Whose cattle are these ? *Egon's*.

2. Or by a word that may govern divers cases ; as,
Is hee accused of theft ? or of murder ? Of both.
What cost it ? *A* pennie.

3. When one may answer by a Possessive ; as,
Whose book is this ? *Mine*.
Whose house is this ? *My* Fathers.

Chap.

1. *Obs.* Sicuti Relativum Verbo Nominativus, ita Adjectivo Substantivum fieri potest; ut,

Qui malis gaudet alienis bis miser est.

Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

2. *Obs.* Nomina Interrogativa & Indefinita regulam Relativi sequuntur, quæ semper præcedunt verbum sicuti Relativum; ut,

Qualis erat? Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.

§. V. Regula de Interrogativo, & ejus Redditivo.

„**I**nterrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus, & temporis erunt; i. e. quo casu vel tempore quæritur, in eodem respondebitur; ut,

§. De Interrogativo & Redditivo

Quid agitis? Studemus.

Quis dives est? Qui nil cupiat. Quis pauper? Avarus. Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia?

Consultur de Religione.

1. *Obs.* Fallit hæc regula, quoties diversa vocum natura diversos casus exigit; viz.

1. Quoties interrogatio fit per *Cujus*, *ja*, *jum*; ut,
Cujum pecus? Ægonis.

2. Aut per dictionem variaz Syntaxeos; ut,
Furtive accusatur, an homicidii? Utroque, vel de Quanti constitit? Dehario. (utroque.)

3. Quoties per Possessivum respondere licet; ut,
Cujus est hic codex? Meus.

Cujus est hæc domus? Paterna.

Chap. 2. Of the Government of Nouns.

9. Of Construction.

Government is the Construction of words, according to which everie foregoing word governeth a certain case or mood of the word which followeth it.

Government is {
 Of Nouns, Chap. 2.
 Of Pronouns, Chap. 3.
 Of Verbs, Chap. 4.
 Of Participles, Chap. 5.
 Of Adverbs, Chap. 6.
 Of Conjunctions, Chap. 7.
 Of Prepositions, Chap. 8.
 Of Interjections, Chap. 9.

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

1. Of Nouns.

Nouns govern four cases: {
 A Genitive, §. VI.
 A Dative, §. VII.
 An Accusative, §. VIII.
 An Ablative, §. IX.

§. VI. The rule of Nouns governing a Genitive case.

6. With a Genitive case.

These are they that govern a Genitive case.
 I. Substantives: For when two Substantives com together betokening divers things, the later shall bee the Genitive case; as,

*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
 God's word remaineth for ever.*

1. *Obf.* But if two or more Substantives belong to one thing, they shall bee put in the same case; as,
 My

Cap. 2.

De Regimine Nominum.

Regimen est constructio dictionum, secundum ^{2. Regimi-}
 quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum ^{nis}
 casum vel modum sequentis.

Est autem Regimen	{	Nominum, Cap. 2.
		Pro nominum, Cap. 3.
		Verborum, Cap. 4.
		Participiorum, Cap. 5.
		Adverbiorum, Cap. 6.
		Conjunctionum, Cap. 7.
		Præpositionum, Cap. 8.
		Interjectionum, Cap. 9.

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, excep-
 tã Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tem-
 pora postulat.

Nomina regunt qua- tuor casus: viz.	{	Genitivum, §. VI.
		Dativum, §. VII.
		Accusativum, §. VIII.
		Ablativum, §. IX.

1. Nomi-
num

§. VI. Regula de Nominibus Genitivum
 regentibus.

Genitivum regunt.

I. Substantiva: Quum enim duo Substantiva
 diversæ significationis concurrant, posterius in Geni-
 tivo ponitur; ut,

Timor domini est initium sapientiæ.

Verbum Dei manet in æternum.

1. Obs. Sin duo vel plura Substantiva sint ejusdem
 rei, in eodem casu ponentur; ut,

Pater

6. Genitivo

1. My father beeing a man loveth mee a childe.

Mark Tullie Cicero the Prince of Orators.

2. *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is often changed into an Adjective Possessive; as,

My father's house.

My master's son.

3. *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometimes understood by an *Ellipsis* or defect of a word; as,

To * *St Marie's.*

* *Church.*

I saw this man's † *Byrrhia.*

† *Servant.*

The third * of the Kalends.

* *Daie.*

4. An Adjective of the Neuter gender beeing put for a Substantive will have a Genitive case; as,

As much monie as any man keep's in his chest, so much credit hee hath.

Wee do not see that (end) of the wallet which is on the back.

So also will others after the Greek fashion; as,

Black wooll will take no die.

Sneaking dogs clap the tail under the bellie.

5. Words importing anie qualitie to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verb Substantive, shall bee put in the Ablative or Genitive case; as,

A childe of an ingenuous look, and ingenuous blush.

Everie basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.

6. *Opus* and *Usus* when they bee Latine for need, will have an Ablative case; as,

What need words?

Hee hath need of twentie pounds.

But *Opus* necessarie, admit's of divers cases; as,

A guide is necessarie for us.

Get such things as are necessarie for you.

II. Adjectives that signifie desire, knowledge, remembrance, care, fear, or such like passion of the minde; as, *The nature of man is eager of news.*

The

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.

2. *Obs.* Genitivus possessoris sæpissimè in Adjectivum possessivum mutatur ; ut,

Patri domus, vel Paterna domus.

Heri filius, vel herilis filius.

3. Prius Substantivum quandoque per *Ellipsin* subauditur ; ut,

Ad * *Sæ Mariæ.* * *Templum.*

† *Hujus video Byrrhiam.* † *Servum.*

Tertio * *Kalendarum.* * *Die.*

4. Adjectivum in neutro genere Substantivè positum Genitivum postulat ; ut,

Quantum quisque suâ nummorum servat in arcâ,

Tantum habet & fidei

Non videmus id manticæ quod in tergo est.

Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione ; ut,

Nigra lanarum nullum bibunt colorem.

Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.

5. Nomina qualitatem denotantia ad laudem vel vituperium rei efferentur in Ablativo vel Genitivo post Nomen vel Verbum Substantivum ; ut,

Ingenui vultûs puer, ingenuique pudoris.

Contemptissimus quisque solutissimâ est linguâ.

6. *Opus* & *usus* pro necesse, gaudent Ablativo ; ut,

Quid verbis opus est.

Usus est viginti minis.

Opus verò pro *necessarius* variè construitur ; ut,

Dux nobis opus est.

Quæ tibi opus sunt para.

II. Adjectiva quæ desiderium, noticiam, memoriam, curam, timorem, aut ejusmodi animi affectionem significant ; ut, *Est natura hominum novitatis avida.*

Mens

The Latine Grammar.

The minde is foresighted of that which is to com.
 Live mindeful of death. Fearful of a storm.
 Ignorant of learning.

III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ax*; “
 as, Virtue is an abandoner of vices.

Time is a consumer of things.

IV. Nouns Partitives; as, Som of you.

Take whether of these thou wilt.

V. Nouns beeing put partitively; viz. having “
 after them this english of or among; such as are,

1. Certain Interrogatives; as, Which of the brethren?
 Is there anie among men so miserable as I am.

2. Certain nouns of Number; viz. Cardinals and
 Ordinals; as, Four of the Judges.

It is not yet apparent who was the eighth of the
 wise men.

3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative
 degree; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the longest among the fingers.

1. Obs. Yet these in another sens will have an Ab-
 lative case; as,

The first from Hercules. The third from Aeneas.

2. And in another sens a Dative; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3. They are used also with the Prepositions by
 which their Genitive case is explained; as,

One of you is a god. One alone of a great manie.

The chief amongst all.

VI. Besides a great companie of other Adjectives,
 (viz. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps, and the like) which
 may better bee learned by frequent reading; as,

Able to perform his vow. Accused of thest. Exempted
 from all fault. Partaking of his counsel.

Touching which see LINACER's or DISPAU-
 TER's Grammars.

Mens est *præsaga* futuri.

Vive *memor* mortis. *Tinidus* procellæ.

Rudis literarum.

„ III. Verbalia in *ax* ; ut,

Virtus est *vitiorum* *fugax*.

Tempus *edax* rerum.

IV. Partitiva ; ut, *Aliquis* *vestrûm*.

Utrum horum *mavis* accipe.

„ V. Partitivè posita ; viz. quæ per *de*, *è*, *ex*, *de*, aut *inter* exponuntur, cuiusmodi sunt,

1. Interrogativa quædam ; ut *Quis* *fratrum* ?

An quisquam *hominum* est *æquè* *miser* ut *ego* ?

2. Cæta Numeralia ; viz. Cardinalia & Ordinalia ;
ut, *Quatuor* *judicum*.

Sapientum *octavus* *quis* fuerit nondum constat.

3. Comparativa & Superlativa ; ut,

Manuum *fortior* est *dextra*.

Digitorum *medius* est *longissimus*.

1. *Obs.* Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt cum præpositione ; ut,

Primus *ab* *Hercule*. *Tertius* *ab* *Ænea*.

2. In alio verò sensu Dativum ; ut,

Nulli *pietate* *secundus*.

3. Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet ; ut,

Est *deus* *è* *vobis* *alter*. *Solus* *de* *plurimis*.

Primus *inter* *omnes*.

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba, (viz. *Compos*, *reus*, *exfors*, *particeps*, &c.) crebrâ lectione melius addiscenda ; ut,

Compos *voti*. *Reus* *furti*. *Omnis* *culpæ* *exfors*.

Illius *consilii* *particeps*.

De quibus videtis **L I N A C R U M & D I S P A U T E R I U M.**

§. VII. The rule of Nouns governing
a Dative case.

7. A Dative:

THese govern a Dative case.

1. Adjectives that betoken

1. Profit or Disprofit ; as,

O bee good and favorable to thine own.

Fit for the Countie, profitable for the field.

A rout grievous to the peace, and enemie to gentle rest.

2. Likeness or Unlikeness ; as,

A Poët is verie near to an Orator. Equal to Hector.

Disagreeing to the truth.

3. Pleasure ; as, *Pleasant to all persons.*

4. Submitting ; as, *Beseeching his father.*

5. Belonging to anie thing ; as,

Idleness will bee troublesome to thee.

There is no waie unpassable for virtue.

6. Hitherto are referred nouns compounded with

Con ; as, *Cognatus mihi*, a kin to mee.

1. *Obs.* Yet som of these which signifie Likeness may have a Genitive case ; as,

Thou art like thy Master.

Hee was equal to this man. Partaker of the roguerie.

2. *Obs.* *Communis*, *alienus*, *immutis*, *proprius*, *consciens*, and *superstes* will have divers cases ; as,

Common to all living creatures.

Death is common to all men.

This is common betwixt mee and thee.

Unmeet for the purpose. Far from ambition.

Estranged from Scevola's studies.

Free from this evil. Free to all.

Wee are free from those evils.

It's proper to fools. Proper to mee.

I am guiltie to my self of no fault.

§. VII. Regula de nominibus Dativum regentibus.

Dativum regunt.

- „ I. Adjectiva quibus significatur
1. Commodum aut Incommodum ; ut,
Sis bonus & felixque tuis.
Patria idoneus, utilis agro.
Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti.
„ 2. Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo ; ut,
Est finitimus Oratori Poëta. Aequalis Hæctori.
Veritati dissentaneum.
„ 3. Voluptas ; ut, *Fecundus omnibus.*
„ 4. Submissio ; ut, *Parenti supplex.*
„ 5. Relatio ad aliquid ; ut,
Otium tibi molestum erit.
Invia virtuti nulla est via.
6. Huc referuntur ex *Con* Præpositione composita ; ut, *Mihi cognatus.*
1. *Obs.* Quædam tamen ex his quæ Similitudinem significant Genitivo gaudent ; ut,
Domini similis es.
Par hujus erat. Affinis sceleris vel sceleri.
2. *Obs.* *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius,*
& *superstes* variis casibus serviunt ; ut,
Commune animantium omnium.
Mors omnibus communis est.
Hoc mihi tecum commune est.
Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.
Alienus à Scevolæ studiis.
Immunis hujus mali. Omnibus immunis.
Immunes ab illis malis sumus.
Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.
Nihi nullius culpe conscius sum.

7. Dativo.

Hee was privie to the prank,

Hee outlived his honor.

That surviveth other things.

3. *Obs.* *Natus*, *commodus*, *incommodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *vehemens*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *par*, *equalis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

Born to glorie. Shoos fit for the feet.

A man good of no side.

Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.

„ II. Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and of

„ the Passive signification in *bilis*; as,

Hee is dead, beeing to bee lamented of all good men.

And more to bee lamented by none then thee.

§. VIII. The Rule of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

„ **A**djectives govern an Accusative which signifie
„ the measure of length, bredth, or thickness of
„ anie thing; as, *A foot high. An hand broad.*

„ *Three fingers thick. Seven foot long.*

But they sometimes also govern $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{A Genitive case; as, } \textit{Borders} \\ \text{ten foot broad.} \\ \text{An Ablative; as, } \textit{A Well} \\ \text{three foot wide.} \end{array} \right.$

§. IX. The Rule of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

„ I. **T**hese govern an Ablative case.

„ 1. Nouns, and Adverbs of the Comparative
„ degree having *then*, *by*, or *in* after them; as,

Silver is baser then gold, and gold then virtue.

No Theatre to truth is greater then Conscience.

Higher by a foot. To excel in strength.

1. *Obs.*

Is conscius illi facinori fuit.

Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.

Superstes omnium rerum.

3. *Obs. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehementer, aptus, ineptus, par, æqualis*, interdum etiam Accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur; ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.

Homo ad nullam partem utilis.

Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares. Cic.

II. Verbalia in *bilis* accepta passivè; ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit,

Nulli flebilior quàm tibi.

§. VIII. Regula de Nominibus Accusativum regentibus.

„ **A** Djectiva regunt Accusativum significantem magnitudinis mensuram; ut,

Altus pedem. Latus manum.

Crassus tres digitos. Septem pedes longus.

Sed interdum $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitivum; ut, } \textit{Arcæ latæ pedum} \\ \text{denum.} \\ \text{Ablativum; ut, } \textit{Fons latus pedibus} \\ \text{tribus.} \end{array} \right.$

§. IX. Regula de Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

A Blativum regunt.

1. Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per quàm, aut post se habent nomen significans mensuram excessus; ut,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.

Nullum theatrum veritati conscientia majus est.

Uno pede altior. Viribus præstare.

P

I. *Obs.*

1. Obs. Tantò, quantò, multò, paulò, nimìò, eò, quò, hoc, atate, natu, are joined to both degrees of comparison; as,

Hee is far more skilful then the rest, but not much better.

By how much one is less learned, by so much hee is more impudent. The greatest in age, i. e. The eldest.

The less by birth, i. e. The youngest.

II. These Adjectives dignus, indignus, praeclitus, capius, contentus, extorris, fretus; as,

Thou art worthie of hatred.

Unbefitting the gravitie of a wiseman.

Endued with everie virtue. Deprived of eyes.

Get thee hence, content with thy condition.

Banished from his own house. Trusting to thy clemencie.

1. Obs. But dignus, and indignus will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, A warfare worth thy labor.

Not unworthie of his great Ancestors.

III. Nouns of Diversitie will have an Ablative

case with a Preposition; as, Another thing from this. Another man from him.

And sometimes a Dative; as, Different from this thing.

IV. Adjectives and Verbs that signifie plentie or

want will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, Love is verie full both of bonie and gall.

Love is a thing full of thoughtfom fear.

Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.

Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.

Void of guile. Blessed with grace.

Go on or increas in virtue. Upright in life.

I. Obs. Som of these will have also an Ablative

case with a Preposition; as, Void of anger.

V. Anie Adjective or Verb wil have an Ablative case,

1. Of the Instrument; as, Stout at the sword.

Better at Oars. JESUS vanquished the Devil, not

with arms, but with death.

I. Obs: *Tanò, quantò, multò, paulò, nimìò, eò, quò, hòc, etate, natu, utrique gradui apponuntur, ut,*

Longè cæteris peritior est, sed non multò melior.

Quò quis indoctior, eò impudentior.

Maximus etate. Minimus natu.

II. *Dignus, indignus, praditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, ut,*

Dignus es odio.

Indignum sapientis gravitate.

Omni virtute praditus. Captus oculis.

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.

„ Obs. *Dignus & indignus interdum etiam Genitivum vindicant, ut, Militia operis digna tui.*

Magnorum non indignus avorum.

„ III. *Nomina diversitatis, Ablativum sibi cum Præpositione subjiciunt, ut, Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.*

Et nonnunquam Dativum, ut huic diversum.

„ IV. *Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatēve perti-*

„ nent, interdum Ablativo, interdum & genitivo

„ gaudent, ut, Amor & melle & felle est fecundissimus.

Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.

Amore abundans. Cares virtute.

Dives nivei pecoris. Dives agris.

Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.

Melle lis virtute. Integer vita.

I. Obs. *Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione, ut, Vacuus ira, irâ, ab irâ.*

V. *Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum admittit Ablativum,*

1. Instrumenti, ut, Ense validus. Melior remis.

Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit IESUS.

2. Of the *Caus*; as, *Pale with anger.*

Wors for too much libertie.

3. Of the *Circumstance* or manner of doing of the thing; as,

An envious man groweth lean at the prosperitie of another. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Barbarian. A Trojane by birth, a Syrian by nation.

Crooked old age wil com by and by with a stil pace

1. *Obs*: But sometimes the Ablative case of the caus or manner of doing will have a Preposition, as,
Unprovided of monie.

Hee used the man with a great deal of courtesie.

„ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of buying and selling will
„ have an Ablative case of the price, as,

Cheap at twentie pounds. Dear at a farthing.

Not to bee sold for pearls, or purple, or gold.

That victorie cost much blood, and manie wounds.

Hee taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.

To hire for a pennie. To let for a shilling.

Hee live's at ten pounds rent.

1. *Obs*. Yet these words, when they are without Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive case; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, as,

I sell not for more then others, but for less.

Things are so much worth as they may be sold for.

N. B. A Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joined with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may bee governed, shall bee put in the Ablative case absolute; as,

The King coming the enemies ran away i, e. When the King com's. Theeing Captain.

And it may bee resolved by *whilst, when, if, &c.*

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Passives and Neuters that signifie som propertie or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the propertie or passion is; as,

Hee

2. *Causæ* : ut, *Pallidus irâ.*

Deteriores licentiâ.

Invidus alterius rebus macrescit opimis.

3. *Circumstantiæ*, modi actionis aut rei ; ut,

Nomine Grammaticus, re barbârus.

Troianus origine, Syrus natione.

Jam veniet tacito curva senectâ pede.

1. *Obs.* Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur *Præpositio* ; ut,

Imparatus à pecuniâ.

Cic.

Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

„ VI. A *adjectiva* & *Verba mercandi* regunt Ablativum *pretii* ; ut,

Vitis viginti minis. Asse carus.

Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venale, nec auro.

Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit.

Mercede docuit. Vili venit triticum.

Addicere denario. Locare solido.

Habitat decem minis.

1. *Obs.* Hæc tamen sine *Substantivis* posita, *Verbis* subjiciuntur in *Genitivo* ; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris* ; as,

Non vendo pluris quàm alii, sed minoris.

Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.

„ N. B. Ablativus absolutè ponitur expresso *Participio* vel *subaudito* ; ut,

Rege veniente hostes fugerunt.

Me duce.

Et resolvitur per *Dum, cum, si, &c.*

„ VII. *Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, & Neutralia*, significantia aliquam proprietatem vel passionem, possunt regere *Accusativum*, vel *Ablativum*, significantem partem in qua est *proprietas* aut *passio* ; ut,

Hee is diseased in his feet. Hee is sick in minde rather then in bodie.

Hee hath red hair. Red-haired.

1. *Obs.* But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case; as, O thou! that hast an happie wit. Thou troublest thy self in mindē.

2. *Obs.* These bee Greek phrases:

Merrie as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and color.

Chap. 3. Of the government of Pronouns.

3. Of Pronouns.

THESE Genitive cases of the Primitives *Mei, tui, sui, nostri* and *vestri* bee used when suffering or passion is signified, but *Meum, tuum, suum, noster* and *vester* bee used when action or possession is signified, as, Part of thee. Thy part. The image of us. Our image. The love of himself. His own love. (i. e.) of mee.

1. *Obs.* Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives, as, Hee did it for my sake.

2. *Obs.* *Nostrum* and *vestrum* bee used after distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, as, Som of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of us.

3. *Obs.* *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain genitive cases after them, viz. *Ipsius, solius, unius duorum, trium, & c. omnium, plurium, paucorum*, and the genitives of participles which are referred to the Primitive understood in the Possessive, as,

Thou shalt guess out of thine own minde.

Thou hast seen the eies of mee weeping.

II. *Ipse* and *idem* may bee joined to all persons.

I my self will see. Thou thy self go on to do it.

Plato himself said. Hee himself did it.

Idem governeth sometimes a Dative case, as,

Hee

Ager pedes, vel pedibus. Aegrotat animo magis quam corpore.

Rubet capillos. Ruber crine.

1. *Obs.* Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo ponitur; ut, *O te felicem cerebri!*

Angis te animi.

2. *Obs.* Græcæ Phrasés sunt:

Cætera latus. Cætera similis.

Huic vocem colorem similis est.

Cap. 3. De Regimine Pronominum.

MEi, tuî, suî, nostrî, vestrî ponuntur cum passio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, cum actio vel possessio significatur; ut, 2. Pronominum.

Pars tuî. Pars tua. Imago nostrî. Imago nostra.

Amor suî. Amor suus.

1. *Obs.* Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis usurpantur; ut, *Meâ causâ fecit, i. e. meî.*

2. *Obs.* *Nostrûm & vestrûm* sequuntur Distributiva, Partitiva, & Comparativa, & Superlativa; ut, *Aliquis vestrûm. Major vestrûm. Maximûs natû nostrûm.*

3. *Obs.* *Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, quosdam Genitivos post se recipiunt; viz. *ipsum, solius, unius, duorum, trium, omnium, plurium, paucorum*, & Genitivos Participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Possessivo inclusum; ut,

Ex tuî ipsius animo conjecturam feceris.

Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.

II. *Ipse & idem* omnibus personis adjungi possunt; ut

Ego-ipse videbo. Idem perge facere.

Ipse Plato dixit. Hic idem fecit.

Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ut,

Hee that saveth a man against his will, doth the same as hee that kil's him.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Preposition, as. *The same with it.*

III. *Ille* noteth the eminencie or worth of a thing; and *Iste* the baseness or contempt of it, as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow.
Hic is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self; *ille* to the former, and the further from it, as,

The husbandman's aim is contrarie to the shepard's; *hee* look's for profit from his land; and *hee* from his stock of cattle.

Chap. 4. Of the government of Verbs.

V Erbs govern a	{	Nominative	{	§. X.
		Genitive		§. XI.
		Dative		§. XII.
		Accusative		§. XIII.
		Ablative		§. XIV.

To which also belong the Rules	{	Of such as have a divers construction. §. XV.
		Of the Infinitive mood, of the Gerunds, and Supines. §. XVI.
		Of time, space and place. §. XVII.
		Of Verbs Impersonals. §. XVIII.

§. X. The Rule of Verbs governing a Nominative Case.

3. Of Verbs with
 1. A Nominative. „ V Erbs Substantives, certain passives, and Verbs of gesture will have a Nominative case after them as well as before them, as, God

Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti.

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum præpositione,
ut, *Idem cum illo.*

III. *Ille* eminentiam rei denotat; *Iste* verò contemp-
tum, ut, *Alexander ille.* *Iste* homuncio.

Hic ad posterius & propius antepositum; *ille* ad
prius & remotius usitatissimè refertur; ut,

Agricola contrarium est *Pastoris* propositum;
ille fructum è terra sperat; *hic* è pecore.

Chap. 4. De Regimine Verborum.

V	Erba re- gunt	{	Nominativũ	} Casũ,	§. X.
			Genitivum		§. XI.
			Dativum		§. XII.
			Accusativum		§. XIII.
			Ablativum		§. XIV.

Quibus acci- dunt Regulæ	{	De variam constructionem habentibus. §. XV.
		De Modo infinito, Gerundiis, & Supinis. §. XVI.
		De tempore, Spatio, & loco. §. XVII.
		De Impersonalibus. §. XVIII.

§. X. Regula De Verbis Nominativum Regentibus.

„ Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba
gestûs, utrinque nominativum experunt, ut,
Deustivo.

3. Verbo-
rum.

cum
1. Nomina.

God is the chiefeſt good.

Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.

An evil ſhepherd ſleepeth void of care.

Hec will becom a learned man.

1. *Obſ:* All manner of Verbs (almoſt) will have after them a Nominative caſe of the Noun Adjective, that agreeth with the Nominative caſe of the Verb, in caſe, Gender. & Number, as,

The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very ſeldom.

Good boies learn diligently. I ſpeak often.

§. XI. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Caſe.

s. A Genitive.

THEſe Verbs govern a Genitive caſe:

1. *I. Sum*, when it betokeneth poſſeſſion, or, otherwiſe pertaining to a thing, as a propertie or dutie, as, *This houſe is my father's houſe.*

It is (the dutie) of a young man to reverence his elders.

It is the propertie of a good ſhepherd to ſhear his ſheep, not to pill them.

2. *Obſ:* But ſom Adjectives as *meum*, *tuum*, *humanum*, &c. are put in the Nominative caſe where *officium* or *munus* (a dutie) ſeem's to bee underſtood, as, by an Ellipſis.

It is not my dutie to ſpeak againſt the Autoritie of the Senate.

It is incident to a man to bee angrie. It is a beaſtly part to rage.

It is a Kingly part to do well.

II. Verbs that betoken to eſteem or regard, as, *Honeſtie is reckoned little worth.*

Monie is every where much regarded.

I care not this for thee, who valueſt mee but an hair.

Deus est summum bonum.

Fides Religionis nostræ fundamentum habetur.

Malus Pastor dormit supinus.

Hic evadet vir doctus.

I. Obs: Omnia ferè Verba post se Nominativum habebunt Adjectivi nominis, quod cum supposito Verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat, ut,

Terra manet immobilis. Scribo rarissimè.

Boni discunt seduli. Loquor frequens.

§. XI. Regula De Verbis Genitivum Regentibus.

3. Gen.
ro.

Genitivum regunt.

I. Sum, quoties significat possessionem aut ad aliquid pertinere, ut,

Hæc domus est patris.

Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.

Boni Pastoris est tondere pecus non deglubere.

I. Obs: At hi Nominativi meum, tuum, humanum, &c. usurpantur ubi officium aut munus subintelligi videtur per Ellipsin. ut,

Non est meum contra Autoritatem Senatûs dicere.

Humanum est irasci; Belluinum verò sævire.

Regium est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi.

I. Parvi penditur probitas.

Plurimi passim sūt pecunia.

Non hujus te facio, qui me pili æstimas!

Æquæ

I take it in good part.

1. *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case ; as,
Virtue is much to be esteemed.

Hee valued it at three-pence.

2. *Obs.* *Valeo* will have a Genitive, an Accusative, or
an Ablative case ; as, It is so much worth.

It is worth two farthings.

3. *Obs.* Wee say also, *I account, or esteem it as nothing.*

„ III. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning,
„ or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the
crime or punishment ; as, It behooveth him to look
to himself, that accuseth another of dishonestie.

They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.

Hee admonished mee of a mistake.

Hee is acquitted of theft.

1. *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes
into an ablative, either with, or without a prepo-
sition ; as, I will condemn thee of the same fault.

Is hee accused of theft, or dishonestie ? Of both.

*I thought that thou wert to be admonished of that
matter.*

„ IV. *Satago, misereor, and miseresco ; as,*

Hee is busie about his own matters. Pitie the pains.

Pitie thine own stock.

1. *Obs.* But *misereor* and *miseresco*, are sometimes
read with a Dative case ; as,

Pitie this man. Have compassion on the bad.

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, and memini ; as,*

*Hee remembreth his promise. It is the propertie of
fools to see other men's faults and forget their own.*

I will make thee to remember mee alwaies.

1. *Obs.* And these will have also an Accusative case ;
as, *I remember my lesson. I forget the song.*

„ VI. Som also, after the manner of the Greeks,
will have a Genitive case ; as,

Cease their womanish complaints.

Æqui, boni consulo, vel facio.

1. *Obs. Æstimo Ablativum etiam adsciscit ; ut,
Magno virtus æstimanda est.*

Tribus denariis æstimavit.

2. *Obs. Valeo cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum
Accusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur ; ut,
Tanti valet. Valet duos asses, vel duobus assibus.*

3. *Obs. Dicimus etiam, Pro nihilo puto, habeo, duco, &c.
„ III. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, &
„ absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel pœnæ postu-
lant ; ut, Qui alterum incusat probri eum ipsum se
intueri oportet.*

Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabunt.

Admonuit me errati.

Furti absolutus est.

1. *Obs. Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Ab-
lativum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione;
ut, Condemnabo te eodem crimine.*

Accusatur furti an stupri ? Utroque, vel de utroque.

Putavi eâ de re admonendum esse te.

- „ IV. *Satago, misereor, miseresco ; ut*

Is rerum suarum satagit, Miserere laborum.

Generis miseresce tui.

1. *Obs. At misereor & miseresco rarius cum Dativo le-
guntur ; ut,*

Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.

- „ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, & memini ; ut,*

*Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum,
aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.*

Faciam ut mei semper memineris.

1. *Obs. Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant ; ut,
Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.*

- „ VI. *Quædam etiam more Græcorum Genitivum
admittunt ; ut,*

Desine mollium querelarum. Hor.

Tempus

It is time to give over the fight.

Hee is worthy of all mischief, that blusbeth at his Fortune.

5. XII. Of Verbs governing a Dative case.

- Dative.** „ **A**ll manner of Verbs put acquisitively, i. e. which are known commonly by these tokens to or for after them will have a Dative case, as,
 I have it for *this man* and not for thee.
 I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor mowing for mee there.
 And to this rule do also belong Verbs that be-roken,
- „ 1. To profit or disprofit, as,
 It cannot profit or disprofit mee.
 Hee hurteth the good, who spareth the bad.
 - „ 2. To compare, as,
 To compare great things with small.
 Hee made himself equal to his Brother.
 1. Obs: But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition, as,
 If hee bee compared to him hee is nothing.
 I compare Virgil with Homer.
 - „ 3. To give or to restore, as, Fortune hath given too much to manie, enough to none.
 Hee is ungrateful that requite's not a favor to him that deserveth it.
 - „ 4. To promise or paie, as,
 I promise thee these things.
 Hee hath paid the debt unto mee.
 - „ 5. To command or to shew, as,
 Monie hoarded up commandeth or serveth everie bodie.
 Take heed oftimes, what thou saiest of anie bodie, and to whom.

6. To

Tempus desistere pugnæ. Virg.

Dignus est omni malo qui erubescit fortuna. Curt.

§. XII. Regula de Verbis Dativum regentibus.

„ **D**ativum regunt,
 „ Omnia verba acquisitivè posita ; ut,
Huic habeo non tibi.
Non omnibus dormio.
Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.

3. Dativo

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba,

„ 1. Significantia Commodum aut Incommodum ;
 „ ut,

Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare.
Bonis nocet qui malis parcit.

„ 2. Comparandi ; ut,
Parvis componere magna.
Fratri se adequavit.

1. Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus
 aut Ablativus cum Præpositione ; ut,
Si ad eum comparatur nihil est.
Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

„ 3. Dandi & reddendi, ut, *Fortuna multis nimidum*
dedit,, nulli satis.
Ingratus est qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.

„ 4. Promittendi ac solvendi, ut, *Hæc tibi promitto.*

Æs alienum mihi numeravit.

„ 5. Imperandi aut nuntiandi, ut,
Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.
Quid de quoque viro, aut cui dicas sæpe caverò.

6. Fiden-

- „ 6. To trust, as, *Beleiv not a woman, no though shee seem dead. I commit this to thy trust.*
- „ 7. To Obey, or to bee against ; as,
A dutiful son alwaies obeieth his father.
Fortune resisteth sluggish praier.
- „ 8. To threaten or to bee angrie with ; as,
Hee threatned death to them both.
I am angrie with thee.
- „ 9. *Sum*, with its Compounds, except *possum* ; as,
Hee is a father to the citie, and a husband to the citie.
Manie things are wanting to them that desire manie things.
1. *Obs.* Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying to have ; as, *Everie man hath his own liking.*
Wee have mellow apples.
Hee is not poor, who hath the use of things.
2. *Obs.* *Sum*, with manie others will have a double Dative case ; as,
The sea is a destruction to greedie seamen.
A godlie King is an ornament to the Common-wealth.
Thou hopest it will bee a praist to thee, which thou imputeest as a fault to mee.
- „ 13. Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis*,
 „ *bene*, *malè*, and the Prepositions, *Pra*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*,
 „ *ante*, *post*, *in*, and *inter* ; as,
Hee hath don good to manie, hee hath don ill to none.
I prefer no man before thee.
A new relator addeth somthing to things hee hath heard.
1. *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative case into another case ; as,
One man excell's another in wit.
I forbid thee fire und water.
2. *Obs.* But *Praeo*, *pracedo*, *pracurro*, with som other Compounds of *pra*, will have rather an Accusative case ; as, *Thou shalt go before mee.*

„ 6. Fidendi, ut, *Mulieri nē credas, nē mortuæ quidem. Hoc tuæ mando fidei.*

„ 7. Obsequendi & repugnandi, ut,
Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.
Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.

„ 8. Minandi & irascendi, ut.

Vtrique mortem minatus est.

Irascor tibi.

„ 9. *Sum, cum compositis, præter possum, ut,*
Urbi pater est, Vrbique maritus.

Multa petentibus desunt multa.

Obs. Item Sum & suppetit pro habeo, ut,

Velle suum cuique est.

Sunt nobis mitia poma.

Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.

2. *Obs. Sum cum multis aliis geminum adsciscit*
Dativum ; ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis.

Rex pius est Reipublica ornamento.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis.

„ 10. *Composita cum Adverbiis Satis, bene, malè,*

„ *& Præpositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,*

„ *inter, ut,*

Benefecit multis, malefecit nulli.

Neminem tibi antepono.

Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Autor.

1. *Obs. Pauca ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in*
aliu casum ; ut

Præstat ingenio alius alium.

Interdico tibi aquâ & igni.

2. *Obs. Sed Præco, præcedo, præcurro, & quædam alia*
Composita cum præ Accusativo potius junguntur, ut,

Præibis me.

3. *Obs.* There is oft-times a Pleonasm or redundancy of the Dative cases, *Mibi, tibi, sibi* ; as,
I Slaie *this man* with his own sword.

N. B. Somtimes a Dative case is put figuratively instead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Preposition : and of som it is called the eighth case ; as,
The crie goeth unto heaven. Keep the heat from the cattle.

S. XIII. The rule of Verbs governing an Accusative case.

4. Accusative.

„ Verbs Transitives, are all such as have after them an Accusative case of the doer or sufferer as, Fear God. Honor the King.

It's a son's dutie to reverence his parents.

The fierce lioness followeth the wolf, and the wolf the kid.

1. *Obs.* Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and somtimes an Ablative ; as, I live a life. To live a life long.

Thou sleepest Endimion's sleep. They rejoiced with exceeding great joy. To go a long waie. To go the right waie. Hee died a sudden death.

2. *Obs.* Som verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively ; as, Hee smell's like a goat. The voice sound's like a man. Hee offend's in the same thing. They counterfeite sober men, and live riotously.

3. Verbs of Asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and another of the Thing ; as,

Do thou onely ask God leav..

Hunger teacheth a man manie things.

Hee put on his shooes which hee had first put off.

But

3. *Obs.* Sæpe fit Pleonasmus five redundantia Darivorum *Mihi, tibi, sibi, ut,*

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

4. *Obs.* Aliquando Darivus figuratè ponitur pro Accusativo cum Præpositione, & à nonnullis dicitur octavus casus, ut,

It clamor calo pro ad calum.

Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore.

S. XIII. *Regula de Verbis Accusativum Regentibus.*

Verba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum, ut,

Deum time. Regem honora.

Filiu est, revereri parentes.

Torva Leæna lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam.

4^a Accusativo.

1. *Obs.* Verba absoluta Accusativum admittunt cognatæ significationis & aliquando Ablativum, ut,

Viro vitam vitâ diu vivere.

Endymionis somnum dormis

Gaudebant gaudium valdè magnum..

Longam ire viam. Ire restâ viâ.

Morte obiit repentinâ.

2. *Obs.* Quædam etiam figuratè Accusativum habent, ut,

Olet hircum. Sonat hominem.

Eadem peccat. Curios simulant & Bacchanalia vivunt.

3. Verba Rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, duplicem regunt Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum rei, ut,

Tu modò posce Deum veniam.

Multa hominem fames docet.

Induit se calcæos, quos priùs exuerat.

4. But som of these somtimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative, with, or without a Preposition; as, I put on thy coat, or, I put thy coat on thee. Hee informeth the Senate of his journey. Let us intreat leav of him.

§. XIV. The rule of Verbs governing an Ablative case.

5. Ablative

These govern an Ablative case.
I. All Verbs, so that the Ablative case bee

1. Of the Instrument.

2. Of the Cause.

3. Of the Manner of doing.

II. Verbs of Price.

III. Verbs that signifie som proprietie or passion.

IV. Verbs of plentie or scarceness.

V. Som certain Deponents and Neuters, viz.

Fungor,

Fruor,

Utor,

Vescor,

Nitor,

Dignor,

Prosequor

Muto,

Munero,

They that would get true glorie, must discharge the duties of Justice. It is the best to make use of another's madnes.

It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou canst use a good courage.

I eat flesh.

I trust to my strength. It becommeth one to relie on his virtue, not his blood. (nor.

I think not my self worthie of such bo- I pursue thee with love, i. e. I love thee.

Hee changeth square things for round.

Hee rewarded him with the fellowship of his Kingdom. Persua-

Concerning which wee have spoken afore in the Regiment of Nouns.

4. Sed interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel sine Præpositione; ut,

Induote tunicâ, vel tibi tunicam. Senatum edocet de itinere. Veniam oremus ab ipso.

§. XIV. Regula de Verbis Ablativum regentibus.

„ **A**blativum regunt.
 „ I. Quodvis Verbum, modò iste Ablativus sit

1. Instrumenti.
2. Causæ.
3. Modi Actionis.

- „ II. Verba Pretii.
- „ III. Verba proprietatem vel passionem significantia.
- „ IV. Verba Abundandi, & Implendi.

„ V. Certa quædam Deponentia & Neutra, viz.

<i>Fungor,</i>	{	Qui adipisci veram gloriam volunt Justitiæ fungantur officiis.
<i>Fruor,</i>		Optimum est alienâ insaniâ frui.
<i>Utor,</i>		In re malâ, animo si bono utare, juvat.
<i>Vescor,</i>	{	<i>Vescor carnibus.</i>
<i>Nitor,</i>		<i>Nitor meis viribus. Virtute decet non sanguine niti.</i>
<i>Dignor</i>		Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.
<i>Prosequor,</i>		<i>Prosequor te amore.</i>
<i>Muto,</i>		<i>Mutat quadrata rotundis.</i>
<i>Munero,</i>		<i>Regni cum societate munera vit.</i>

5. Ablativus.
VO.

De quibus in
Regimine No-
minum supra
dictum est,

P. 211.

Supersedeo,	} as	{	Wee must leav off the multitude of examples.
Communico,			I will give thee allowance at my table.
Afficio,			I affect thee with joie, or, I make thee glad, with som few others.

VI. Verbs of Comparing or exceeding ; as,
I prefer this man by manie degrees.

Hee is beyond him but a little space.

It is unseemly to bee overcom in virtue by those whom thou excellest in eminencie of place.

„ 7. Verbs that betoken Receiving, distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative case with a Preposition ; as, I heard it of a manie. It is far distant from us. I delivered thee from the evils.

i. Obs. And this Ablative may bee turned into the Dative ; as, Hee took his life from him.

VIII. Mereor will have an Ablative case with the Preposition De ; as, Thou never deservedst well of mee. Cataline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.

IX. Verbs Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometimes a Dative ; as, Virgil is read of mee. A boar is oft-times held by a little dog. Honest things, not hidden things are desired of good men.

i. Obs. The other cases remain in the Passives which belonged to their Actives ; as,

Thou art accused by mee of theft.

Thou shalt bee made a mocking-stock.

2i Obs. Vapulo, vaneo, liceo, exulo, and fio do follow the construction of Passives, i. e. they govern an Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative ; as,

Thou shalt bee whipt by the master. I had rather bee spoiled by a citizen, then sold by an enemy.

What will becom of him ? Virtue is cheapned by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophie banished from banquets.

Superfedeo,] ut	Exemplorum multitudine super-
Communico,		sedendum est.
Afficio.		Communicabo te semper mensâ meâ. Afficio te gaudio, cum paucis aliis.

VI. Verba quæ vim comparationis obtinent, ut,

Præfero hunc multis gradibus.

Paulo intervallo illum superat.

Deforme est ab iis virtutibus superari, quos dignitate præstas.

„ VII. Verba accipiendi, distandi & auferendi Ablativum cum Præpositione optant, ut,

Audivi ex multis. Longè distat à nobis.

Eripui te à malis.

1. Obs. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum. *Eripuit illi vitam.*

VIII. *Mereor* Ablativo adhæret cum Præpositione *De*, ut, *De me nunquam bene meritus es.*

Catilina pessimè de Republica meruit.

IX. Verba passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione, & interdum Dativum, ut,

Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magno sæpe tenetur aper.

Honesti bonis viris, non occulta, petuntur.

1s Obs. Cæteri casus manent in passivis qui fuerunt activorum, ut,

Accusaris à me furti.

Habeberis ludibrio.

2. Obs. *Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exsulo, fio*, Passivorum constructionem habent; i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum, ut,

A Præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illi? virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus.

Cur à conviviiis exsulat Philosophia?

§. XV. The rule of Verbs having divers
Constructions.

With a di-
vers Cong
struction.

„ I. The same verb may have divers cases in a se-
veral respect or consideration, as,
*Hee gave mee his garment for a pawn, Thou beeing
present, with his own hand.*

II. These Verbs have a divers construction

1. In the same signification, a.,

1. I flatter thee.
2. Hee bespotted mee.
3. I hearken to thee.
4. I agree with thee.
5. I dissent from thee.
6. I bestow a book on thee.
7. I mock thee.
8. I bestow my means on thee.
9. I put on thy coat.
10. Hee spread his cloak on the horse.
11. I forbid thee this thing.
12. I cure } my son
 } that disease.
13. I moderate my affection.
14. I deprave thee.
15. I tarrie for thee.
16. I forbid thee the house.
17. I go into the house.

„ 2. In different signification, as,

1. I assent } to thee.
Icom }
2. I envie } thee.
I imitate }
3. I obeie } thee.
I bear }

§. XV. De Verbis variam constructionem
habentibus.

FIdem verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis appo-
ni possunt, ut, Cum diverse
sit significa-
tione.
Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te presente, propriâ ma-
nu.

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,

1. In eâdem significatione, viz.

1. { Adu'o { tibi. } 2. Aspersi { mihi labem.
Adulor { te. } me labe.

3. Attendo { tibi, } 4. Consentio { tibi,
te. } tecum.

5. { Dissentio { tibi, à te } 6. Dono { tibi librum,
Dissideo { tecum. } te libro.

7. Illudo { tibi, } 8. Impertio { tibi fortunam meam,
te. } te fortunis meis.

9. Induo { tibi tunicam, } 10. Instravit { equo penulam.
te tunicâ. } equum penulâ.

11. Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hanc re.

12. Medicor { gnato tuo,
istum morbum.

13. Moderor { affectui, } 14. Obtreſto { laudem,
affectum. } laudî.

15. Præstolor { tibi, } 16. Prohibeo { te domo.
te. } tibi domum.

17. Subeo { testum,
testo.

2. In diversâ significatione.

1. Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior.
te, i. e. Adeo.

2. Æmulor { tibi, i. e. Invidet.
te, i. e. imitor.

3. Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio.
te, i. e. Audio.

4. { I see to thee.
 { I avoid thee.
 { I make a caution, or I am careful for thee.
 5. { I give place to thee.
 { I go out of the Citie.
 { Give mee a book.
 6. { I advise, Or look to thee.
 { I ask advice of thee.
 { I resolv concerning thee.
 7. { It hapneth to mee.
 { It toucheth mee.
 8. { I favor thee.
 { I desire thee.
 { It is wanting to mee.
 9. { Hee faileth mee.
 { Hee revolteth from mee.
 10. { I give, or send { to carrie to
 { letters to thee { one. to read.
 { I lend thee on usurie.
 11. { I borrow of thee on usurie
 { I am sick of a Fever.
 12. { I take pains for the publick safetie.
 { I am careful for thee.
 13. { I am affraid of thee.
 { I remember thee.
 14. { I spake of thee.
 { I conquer the citie.
 15. { I obtain my desire.
 { I promise you.
 16. { I entertain you.
 { I betake my self home.
 17. { I report it to you.
 { I propound it to you.
 18. { I refuse a gift.
 { I declare him Consul.
 19. { I paie thee.
 { I free thee.

4. Caveo { tibi, i. e. periculum à te avertō.
te, } i. e. declina.
à te, }
de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem.
5. Cedo { tibi.
urbe.
librum.
6. Consulo { tibi, i. e. consilium do, vel prospicio.
te, i. e. consilium à te peto.
in te, i. e. statuo.
7. Contingit { mihi, i. e. accidit.
me, i. e. tangit.
8. Cupio, { tibi, i. e. faveo.
te, i. e. expeto.
mihi, i. e. deest.
9. Deficit { me, i. e. destituit.
à me, i. e. in alteram partem transi.
10. Do, { tibi literas, i. e. ut ad aliquem feras.
Mitto, { ad te literas, i. e. ut legas.
11. Fœnero, { tibi, i. e. do ad usuram.
Fœneror, { abs te, i. e. accipio ad usuram.
12. Laboro { febri.
de salute publicâ.
13. Metuo, Timeo, { te, vel à te. i. e. nē mihi noceas.
Formido { tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum.
14. Memini tuū, te. de te.
15. Potior urbi. Potior voto.
16. Recipio { tibi, i. e. promitto.
te, i. e. accipio,
domum, i. e. confero.
17. Refero { tibi, i. e. narro.
ad te, i. e. propono.
18. Renuntio { muneri, i. e. recuso.
consulem, i. e. declaro.
19. Solvo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio.
te, i. e. libero.

20. { I endeavor this.
 { I desire this.
 { I labor about trifles.
 22. { I have leasure for trifles.
 { I am void of blame.
 { The place is empty.
 Use will teach the rest.

Of the In-
 finitive
 mood.

§. XVI. The Rule of the Infinitive mood.

- Verbs of the Infinitive mood are put after
 Verbs or Adjectives, as,
 Ponticus wilt thou bee made rich? Thou must de-
 sire nothing.
 And hee was worthy to be loved.
 Bold to endure all things. Enduring to bee called.
 1. Obs. They have an Accusative case before them
 in stead of a Nominative as, I bid thee to go hence.
 I bid thee bee in good health.
 Which may bee resolved by that, as; I bid that thou go
 hence. I am glad that thou art in good health.
 2. Obs. They have like cases before and after
 them; as, An Hypocrite desireth to seem just.
 Nature hath granted to all men to bee happye, If anie
 knew how to use it.
 3. Obs. They are sometimes put absolutely by an
 Ellipsis, as,
 That these villanies should bee committed. i.e. It is fit.
 The Lamb trembled. i.e. Begun to tremble.

§. XVII. The Rule of the Gerunds.

Of the
 Gerunds.

Gerunds and Supines will have such a case as
 the Verbs that they com of, as,

Wee

20. *Studeo.* { *huic, i. e. operam do.*
 { *hoc, i. e. cupio.*
21. *Vaco* { *nugis, i. e. operam do.*
 { *ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo.*
 { *culpâ, i. e. careo.*

Vacat locus.

Cætera docebit usus.

§. XV. Regula de Infinitivo Modo.

De Infini-

- „I. **V** Erba Infinita quibusdam tum Verbis tum to modo.
 „ Adjectivis subiiciuntur ; ut,
Vis fieri dives Pontice ? nil cupias.
Et erat tum dignus amari.
Audax omnia perpetr. Patiens vocari.

- „ 1. *Obs.* Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuunt ; ut, *Jubeo te abire.*

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quod & ut ; ut, *Jubeo ut tu abeas. Gaudeo quod tu bene valeas.*

- „ 2. *Obs.* Utrique eisdem casus habet ; ut,
Hypocrita cupit videri justus, vel se videri justum.
Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit si quis cognoverit uti.

- „ 3. *Obs.* Ponuntur interdum absolutè per Ellipsin ; ut,

Hæcine fieri flagitia? i. e. decet.

Agnus trepidare. i. e. caput.

§. XVII. Regula de Gerundis.

- „ **G** Erundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum ; ut, De Gerundis.

Utendum

Wee must use age. To hear a sermon.
And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers

These in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Di} \\ \text{Dum} \\ \text{Do} \end{array} \right\}$ of the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitive} \\ \text{Accusative} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$ Case

as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{An occasion of studying.} \\ \text{I't it to studie.} \\ \text{Wearie with studying.} \end{array} \right.$

Hence is it that,

Di.

1. The Gerund *Di* may bee used after certain Substantives and Adjectives ; as,

There is no place for telling.

The wicked love of having.

Certain of going. Skilful in darting.

For the caus of seeing them. Leav of snatching apples.

1. The Infinitive mood is sometimes put in stead of this Gerund ; as, Skilful to heal.

Do.

2. Gerunds in *Do* bee used with one of these Prepositions; *A, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in pro* ; as,

Idle boies are quickly frighted from learning.

The manner of right writing is joined with speaking.

Obs. Sometimes they are used without a Preposition ; as, Wee learn by teaching.

Dum.

2. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of these Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter* ; as,

In supper while bee merrie.

Christ died to redeem us.

1. *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought* it may bee put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case expressed or understood ; as,

I must go hence. Wee ought to praie that there may bee a sound minde in a sound bodie.

N. B. Gerunds are often turned into Participials in *Dum*, which agree with their Substantives ; as,

In reading old Autors thou shalt profit.

It

Utendum est etate. Auditum concionem.

Et se habent ut nomina triusque numeri.

In { *Di*
 Dum } tanquam { *Genitivi*
 Do } { *Accusativi* } Casus
 Ablativi }

ut, { *Occasio studendi.*
 Aptus ad studendum.
 Fessus studendo.

Huic est quod,

1. Gerundia in *Di* pendent à quibusdam tum Sub- *Di*,
stantivis tum Adjectivis ; ut,

Non est narrandi locus.

Amor sceleratus habendi. Certus erundi.

Peritus jaculandi. Illorum videndi gratiâ.

Licentia deripiendi pomorum.

1. Obs. Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii
ponitur ; ut, *Peritus medicari.*

2. Gerundia in *Do* pendent ab his Præpositionibus *Do*

A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro ; ut,

Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur.

Rectè scribendi ratio cum loquendo, conjuncta est.

1. Obs. Ponuntur & absque Præpositione ; ut,
Docendo discimus.

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositioni- *Dum*
bus, *inter, ante, ad, ob, propter ;* ut,

Inter cœnandum hilares este.

Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.

1. Obs. Cùm significatur necessitas ponuntur citra
Præpositionem, addito Verbo *est* cum Dativo ex-
presso vel subintellecto, ut,

*Abeundum est mihi. Orandum est ut sit mens sana in
corpore sano.*

N. B. Sæpe vertuntur Gerundia in Participalia in
Dum, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt ; ut,

Legendis veteribus proficies.

Ad

It it the next to theft to bee drawn on by a reward to accuse men.

§. XVIII The Rule of Supines.

Of the Supines.
N^m.

THe first *Supine* is put after Verbs and Participles that betoken *moving to a place*; as,
They com to look on. Why goest thou about to undo thy self.

1 *Obs.* But these have a motion scarce discernable;
I set to sale. I bestow my daughter to bee married.

2. The Poets saie, *I go to visit. I go to see.*

3. This *Supine* is put absolutely with the Verb *est*;
It is don.

II. The later *Supine* is put after Nouns Adjectives;
N^m. as, *Easie to bee don. Unhonest to bee spoken.*

§. XIX. The Rule of Time.

Of Time.

NOuns are commonly used,
1. In the Ablative case, which betoken part of Time; i. e. with answer to *when*; as,

No man is wise at all hours.

Thou wakest in the night, and sleepest in the daie.

2. In the Accusative case, which signifie continual term of Time, without ceasing or intermission;
i. e. with answer to the question *how long*? as,

Thou sleepest the whole winter.

Black Pluto's gate lieth open night and day.

3. Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,
Three months agoe. About three years. In a few daies. For a daie. About that age. About that time.

Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum
latrocinio est.

§. XVIII. Regula de Supinis.

„I. **P**rimus Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Participium significans motum ad locum ; ut, De Supinis.
Vn.
Spectatum veniunt.
Cur te is perditum?

1. Obs. Illa verò *Do venum, do filiam nuptum*, latentem habent motum.
2. Poëtice dicunt, *Eo visere. Vado videre.*

„II. Posterius sequitur nomina Adjectiva ; ut,
Facile factu. Turpe dictu.

§. XIX. Regula de Tempore.

„**F**requentius usurpantur
„I. In Ablativo, quæ significant partem temporis, i. e. quando ; ut, De Tempore.
Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Noſte vigilas, luce dormis.
„2. In Accusativo, quæ durationem temporis denotant, i. e. quamdiu ; ut,
„Hyemem totam stertis:
Noſtes atque dies patet atri janua Ditis.

1. Obs. Interdum additur Præpositio ; ut,
Ante tres menses. Per tres annos. In paucis diebus. Circa id ætatis. Id tempus. per vel sub.

§. XX. *The Rule of space or distance of place.*

OF Space.

NOuns that betoken space between place and place bee commonly put in the Accusative case, and somtimes in the Ablative, as,

Depart not a foot-breadth from a good conscience.
They are not manie paces one from another.

§. XXI. *The Rule of Nouns of place.*

OF Place.

NOuns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

1. *In* a place, to a place, *from* a place, or *by* a place (if they bee nouns Appellatives or proper names of great places viz. Regions &c.) bee put with a Preposition, as, Hee is *in* the market.

I live *in* England. Hee went hence *to* the Church.

Hee came *through* France *into* Italie.

Hee is gon *out* of the town.

1. *Obs.* But somtimes the Preposition is understood; as, Hee went *to* Italie.

2. *In* a place or *at* a place (if they bee proper names of cities or towns) of the first or second declension and the Singular Number bee put in the Genitive case; But of the third Declension or Plural number onely in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at* Rome?

Hee lived *at* London. Hee was born *at* Athens.

I beeing unconstant love Tibur *at* Rome, and Rome *at* Tibur.

3. *To* a place (if they bee proper names) are put in the Accusative case, as,

I go *to* London to buie wares.

§. XX. Regula De spatio Loci.

„Spatium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & De Spatio;
„in Ablativo; ut,

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum pedem nē discedas.
Nec multis inter se passibus absunt.

§. XXI. Regula de Loco.

„N Omina loci, cū apponuntur Verbis signifi- De Loco.
„cantibus actionem aut motum,

1. In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum; si sint
nomina Appellativa vel nomina majorum locorum
viz. Regionum &c. adduntur ferè cum Præpositi-
one; ut, In foro versatur.

Vivo in anglia. Ad templum abiit.

Venit per Galliam In Italiam.

Profectus est ex oppido.

1. Obs. Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio; ut
Italiam petiit.

2. In loco aut ad locum (si sint propria nomina Ur-
bium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declina-
tionis & Singularis numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ
declinationis & pluralis duntaxat numeri, Ablati-
vum admittunt; ut,

Quid Romæ faciam? Londini vixit.

Athenis natus est. Romæ Tibur amō ventosus;
Tibure Romam.

§. 3. Ad locum (si sint propria) ponuntur in Accu-
sativo, ut,

Eo Londinum ad merces emendas.

I went to *Cambridg.*

IV. From a place or by a place (if they bee proper names) are put in the Ablative case ; as,

Hee went *by London* to *Cambridg.*

Hee went *from London.*

Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus, and rus* do follow the Rules of Proper Names of Cities or Towns as, Wee live together *at home, and in the wars.*

Hee was brought up *in the Countrie.*

I will go *into the countrie.* Go *home.*

Hee is returned *out of the Countrie.*

Hee is newly gon *from home.*

5. XXII. The Rule of the government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals.
I Active.

„I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern,

„I. A Genitive case, viz. *Interest, refert, and est* for *interest* ; as, *It concerneth all men to do well.*

It much concerneth a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops bee learned and pious.

I Obs. Except these Ablative cases, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, and Cuiâ,* as,

It is expedient to thee to know thy self.

It little concerneth you.

II. A Dative, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, consistat, confert, &c.* which bee put acquisitively ; as,

It is better for mee to die manfully, then to live with disgrace. I am resolved to run all hazards.

III. An Accusative I. Onely, viz. *Fuvat, decet, delectat, oportet,* as, *It becometh not men to scold like women.*

2. With the Preposition *Ad,* viz. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat,* as, *It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well.*

3. With a Genitive viz. *Pœnitet, tædet, misereet, miserescit, pudet, piget* ; as,

It

Concessi Cantabrigiam.

„ IV. A loco aut per locum, (si sint propria) ponuntur in Ablativo ; ut

Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam. Discessit Londino.

Obs. Humus, militia, bellum, Domus, & Rus propriorum sequuntur formam ; ut,

Domi bellique simul vivimus.

Rure educatus est.

Ego rus ibo. Ite domum.

Rure reversus est.

Nuper domo exiit.

S. XXII. De Regimine Impersonalium.

„ I. Impersonalia activæ vocis regunt.

„ I. Genitivum, viz. Interest, refert, & est pro interest, ut, Interest omnium rectè agere.

Refert multam Christiana Reipublica Episcopos doctos & pios esse.

1. Obs. Præter Ablativos meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, & cuiâ, as, —

Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

Vestrâ parvi interest.

„ II. Dativum, viz. Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c. quæ acquisitivè ponuntur ; ut,

Peccare nemini licet. Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quàm per dedecus vivere.

Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.

„ III. Accusativum 1. solum, viz. Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet, ut, Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari.

2. Cum Præpositione Ad, viz. attinet, pertinet, spectat. Ad te attinet. Spectat ab omnes bene vivere.

3. Cum Genitivo, viz. Pœnitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget, ut,

Suz

De Impersonalibus.
1. Activis.

It repenteth everie one of his own estate.

It irketh mee of my life.

2. Passives, II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such cases as other Verbs Passives have; as,
Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for mee.
Hec is gon to Athens. They slept all night.
The enemies fought stoutly.
 1. Obs. Yet manie times the case is not expressed; as,
What do they in the School? They plie their books.
-

Chap. 5.

Of the Government of Participles.

5. Of Participles.

Participles govern such cases as the Verbs that they com of; as, *Like to enjoie his friends.*

Taking order for thee. Called the seven wise men.

1 Obs. But when they bee changed into Nouns they will have a Genitive case; as,

Greedie of another man's goods. Most desirous of thee.

2. Participials in *Dus* will have a Dative case; as,

Hee is to bee earnestly entreated by mee.

3. *Exosus*, and *perosus* having the Active signification will have an Accusative case; as,

Hating crueltie.

But having the Passive, a Dative; as,

Hated of God and good men.

4. *Pertusus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *Wearie of wedlock. Wearie of his sluggishness.*

5. *Natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,

O thou that art born of a Goddess!

A good woman com of good parents.

Of what blood is hee sam?

Suæ quemcunque fortuna pœnitet.
Tædet me vita.

„ II. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum Perso- 2. Passivis
nalibus passivis casus obtinent ; ut,

Mihi istuc nec feritur, nec metitur.

Itur Athenas. Dormitur totam noctem.

Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur.

I. Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non expri-
muntur; ut, Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.

Cap. 5.

De Regimine Participiorum.

„ Participia regunt casus suorum Verborum ; ut,
Fruiturus amicis.

3. Participiorum.

Consulens tibi. Septem vocati sapientes.

I. Obs. Sed cùm fiunt nomina Genitivum postu-
lant ; ut, Alieni appetens. Cupientissimus tuus.

2. Obs. Quæ in Dm verò Dativum ; as,
Mibi exorandus est.

3. Obs. Exosus, & perosus, activè significantia regunt
Accusativum ; ut

Exosus scitiam.

Passivè verò Dativum ; ut,

Exosus Deo & sanctis.

4. Obs. Pertasus nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusati-
vum regit ; ut Pertasus thalami. Ignaviam suam.

5. Obs. Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus,
in Ablativum feruntur ; ut,

Nate Dea.

Bona bonis prognata parentibus.

Quo sanguine cretus?

Chap. 6. Of the Government of Adverbs.

§. I. Of Adverbs which govern cases.

6. Adverbs.
1. With
Case.

Adverbs govern,
1. A Nominative case, viz. *En* see, and *Ecce* behold, beeing adverbs of Shewing; as,
Behold Priam. Lo two Altars.

1 *Obs.* But beeing Adverbs of upbraiding they will have an Accusative; as,

See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.

2. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantitie, time, and place, as, *In what Countrie. To what land. At that time. An abundance of sales. Words enough. Part of the men.*

1. *Obs.* So also *Ergò* for *Causa*; as, *For his sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Pridie* the day before, and *postridie* the daie after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *The daie before that daie. The daie after the Kalends.*

3 *Obs.* *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a proper phrase, or manner of speech.

3 A Dative, viz. such as bee derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case; as, *Hee came to meet him. Hee singeth like him. Hee liveth unprofitably to himself.*

1 *Obs.* These Datives bee used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *luci* by day, *vesperi* at even; as,

Wee must rise betime. Wee must go to bed at even.

Wee must take pains by daie.

4. An Accusative case of the Preposition they bee com of; as, *Nearer the citie. Next to Spain.*

N. B. *Plus, minus, amplius*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,

Above three hundred waggons. Above 50 men. Above half a mile. More then that.

§. II

Cap. 6. De Regimine Adverbiorum.

§. I. De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.

Adverbia regunt,
Nominativum; viz. *En & ecce*, demonstrandi;
ut, *En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria.*

6. Adverbi-
orum.
1. Cum
Casu.

1. *Obs.* Exprobrantis verò Accusativo jungun-
tur; ut, *En habitum. Ecce alterum.*

2. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci temporis &
quantitatis; ut, *Ubi gentium. Quò terrarum. Tunc
temporis. Abunde fabularum. Satis verborum.
Partim virorum.*

1. *Obs.* Sic & ergò pro causâ, ut, *Illius ergò.*

2. *Obs.* Pridie & postridie Genitivum aut Accusati-
vum regunt; ut, *Pridie ejus diei.*

Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.

3. *Obs.* Minimè gentium peculiaris phrasis est.

3. Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus
Dativum regentibus; ut, *Venit obviam illi.*

Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.

1. *Obs.* Sunt & hi Dativi Adverbiales Tempori, luci,
vesperi; ut, *Tempori surgendum. Vesperi cubandum.
Luci laborandum.*

4. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt pro-
fecta; ut, *Propius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.*

N. B. Plus, minus, amplius, Nominativo, Genitivo, Ac-
cusativo & Ablativo, junguntur; ut,

*Plus trecenta vehicula. Plus quinquaginta hominum.
Plus quinginta passus. Plus eo.*

§. II.

§. II. Of Adverbs which govern moods.

With a
Mood.

Ubi when, *postquam* after that, *cum* when, do govern an Indicative ; as, *When I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, com thou.*

Or Subjunctive ; as, *When I sung of Kings, and wars, Apollo snatcht mee by the ear.*

Donec until, govern's an Indicative ; as,

Until hee bad to fold the sheep and count them.

Or Subjunctive ; as, *Until that water, which thou hast put in, bee boiled.*

Donec as long as, an Indicative ; as,

As long as I was safe.

Dum whilst, or as long as, govern's an Indicative ; as, *Whil'st the maid is making readie.*

As long as thou doest what befitteeth thee.

Dum so that, or until, doth govern a Subjunctive ; as, *So that I may profit thee. Until the third Summer shall see him reigning in Italie.*

Quoad as long as, govern's an Indicative ; as,

As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow.

Or Subjunctive ; as, *As long as I could.*

Quoad until, doth govern a Subjunctive ; as,

I will keep all things safe till the Armie bee sent hither.

Simulac & simulatque as soon as, do govern an Indicative ; as, *As soon as hee was able to abide war.*

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*

Quemadmodum as, *ut* as, *utcumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern an Indicative ; as, *As thou salutesst, so shalt thou bee saluted again.*

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *As thou shalt sow, so shalt thou reap.*

Ut after that, doth govern an Indicative ; as,

After that they came into the citie.

Quasi

S. II. De Adverbiis quæ Modos regunt.

Ubi, postquam, & cum, Indicativum regunt; ut, Cum Mo-
 cum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito. do.

Et Subjunctivum; ut,

Cum canerem Reges, & prælia, Cynthius aurem vellit.

Donec pro quousque regit Indicativum; ut,

Cogere donec oves stabulis numerumque referre
 jussit.

Aut Subjunctivum; ut,

Donec ea aqua, quam adjeceris, decocta sit.

Donec pro quamdiu regit Indicativum; ut,

Donec eram sospes.

Dum de re imperfectâ, regit Indicativum; ut,

Dum apparatur virgo.

Dum quod te dignum est facis.

Dum pro quamdiu, dummodo, & donec, regit Subjun-
 ctivum; ut, Dum prosum tibi.

Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit ætas.

Quoad pro quamdiu, Indicativum regit; ut,

Quoad expectes contubernalem.

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, Quoad possem & liceret.

Quoad pro donec regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, quoad exercitus huc mit-
 tatur.

Simulac, Simulatque Indicativum regunt; ut,

Simulac belli patiens erat.

Vel Subjunctivum; ut, Simulatque adoleverit ætas.

Quemadmodum, ut, utcumque, sicut, regunt Indicativum;
 ut, Ut salutabis, ita & resalutaberis.

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, Ut sementem feceris, ita &
 metes.

Ut pro postquam Indicativum regit; ut,

Ut ventum est in Urbem,

Quasi,

Quasi as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as, *Perinde acsi* like as, *Haud secus acsi* no otherwise, then as, do govern a Subjunctive ; as,

As though wee knew not our selvs among our ~~seivs~~ *seivs*.

And these also couple like cases ; as,

I knew the man even as thy self.

Hee smileth on mee as on a friend.

Nè not, an Adverb of Forbidding, doth govern an Imperative ; as, *Bee not so wroth.*

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him.*

Chap. 7. Of the Government of Conjunctions.

§. I. Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

Of Conjunctions which do couple.

Conjunctions Copulatives & disjunctives, and these four *quàm*, *nisi*, *praterquam*, *an*, do couple like cases, and most commonly like moods and tenses ; as, *The night, and love, and wine do perswade no moderate thing.*

Hee is younger then thou art.

Hee pleaseth no bodie but himself.

Peter and John did praie and preach in the Temple.

1. *Obs.* But oftentimes som particular reason of words, require divers cases, moods and tenses ; as,

I bought a book for an hundred asses and more.

I lived at Rome, and at Venice.

I gave them thanks, and will do so whil'st I live.

2. *Obs.* *Cum* and *tum*, and *tum* beeing doubled, will couple like cases ; as,

Hee embraceth all learned men, but especially Marcellus. Hee hateth both learning and virtue.

Quasi, ceu, tanquam, perinde acsi, haud secus acsi, regunt Subjunctivum ; ut,

Quasi non nōrimus nos inter nos.

Atque hæc copulant similes casus ; ut,

Novi hominem tanquam te.

Arridet mihi quasi amico.

Nè Prohibendi Imperativum regit ; ut,

Nè savi tantopere.

Aut Subjunctivum ; ut, Hic nebulo magnus est, nè metuas.

Cap. 7.

De Regimine Conjunctionum.

§. I. De Conjunctionibus quæ Copulant.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ & Disjunctivæ, cum ^{7. De Con-} ^{junctioni-} ^{bus quæ co-} ^{pulant.} his quatuor, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an,* similes omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & tempora conglutinant ; ut, *Nox, & amor, vinumque nihil moderabile suadent.*

Est minor natu quàm tu.

Nemini nisi sibi placet.

Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo.

1. *Obs.* Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio diversos casus, modos, & tempora postulant ; ut,

Emi librum centussi & pluris.

Vixi Romæ & Venetiis

Tibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo.

2. *Obs.* Cùm & tum, item tum geminatum, similes casus copulant ;

Amplectitur cùm eruditos omnes, tum in primis

Marcellum. Odit tum literas, tum virtutem.

§. II.

§. I. Of Conjunctions which govern moods.

Govern
Moods.

E *tsi* although, *tametsi* although, *etiamsi* although, *quoniam* although, in the beginning of a Speech govern an Indicative ; as,

Though no news was brought.

But in the middle of a Speech a Subjunctive ; as, *Thou blamest mee though thou hast don it thy self.*

Quamvis although, *licet* although, commonly do govern a Subjunctive ; as,

Though thou comest thy self.

Ni except, *nisi* unless, *si* if, *siquidem* if so bee, *quod* that, *quia* becauf, *quam* then, *postquam* after, *posteaquam* after that, *ubi* for *postquam*, *nunquam* never, *priusquam* before that, do

govern { An Indicative, } as, { I am glad that thou
or, }
Subjunctive, } art returned safe.

Si if, doth govern an Indicative ; as,

If thou beeest well, it is well.

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *If thou shalt denie, thou shalt bee whipt.*

Si used for *quamvis* though, a Subjunctive ; as,

No not though shee intreat.

Quando seeing that, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* becauf, do govern an Indicative ; as,

Saie on, seeing that wee sit together on the soft gras.

Quippe becauf, doth govern an Indicative ; as,

Becauf hee is sick.

Quippe qui as hee that, doth govern an Indicative, or Subjunctive ; as,

As hee hath twise forsworn himself.

Qui, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Caus, a Subjunctive ; as,

Thou art a fool to believ this fellow, i. e. becauf you believ.
Cum

§. I. De Conjunctionibus quæ Modos regunt.

Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam, in principio Orati-
onis regunt Indicativum; ut,
Etsi nihil novi afferebatur.

Sed in medio Orationis, Subjunctivum ; ut,
Me culpas, *etiamsi ipse feceris.*

Quamvis, & licet frequentius Subjunctivum regunt;
ut,

Ipse licet venias.

Ni, nisi, si, siquidem, quòd, quia, quàm, postquam, posteaquam, ubi pro postquam, nunquam, priusquam,

regunt { Indicativum, aut, Subjunctivum, } ut, { Quod tu rediisti, (vel redieris incolu-
mis, gaudeo.

Si regit { Indicativum ; ut, *Si vales*, bene est.
&
Subjunctivum ; ut, *Si negaveris*, vapulabis.

Si pro quamvis, Subjunctivum ; ut,

Non ; si me obsecret.

Quando, quandoquidem, & quoniam regunt Indicativum; ut,

Dicite, *quandoquidem* in molli *confedimus* herbâ.

Quippe regit Indicativum ; ut,

Quippe agrotat.

Quippe qui, Indicativum & Subjunctivum ; ut,

Quippe qui bis pejeravit, sive pejeraverit.

Qui, cum Quippe subintelligitur, habens vim Causalem, Subjunctivum; ut,

Stultus es qui huic credas.

Citro

Cum for *quavis* although, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* becauf, govern a Subjunctive ; as,

Seeing thou art fit.

Nè, *an*, *num*, whether, of Asking, will have an Indicative ; as, *Whether is hee alive, or no ?*

Of Doubting, a Subjunctive ; as,

See whether hee bee returned ?

Ut to the end that, for *nè non* lest not, for *quandquam* although, and *utpote* becauf, govern's a Subjunctive ; as, *To the end that hee might bee with you.*

I am affraid hee cannot withstand it.

Thoug hall things fall out as I would.

Becauf thou hast deceived mee so oft.

Ut for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodum* even as, *sicut* as, or used in asking, will have an Indicative ; as, *After that I went from the citie.*

Go on to do as thou doft.

Like as is his madness. *How* doth hee ?

Chap. 8. Of the government of Prepositions.

¶ Of Prepositions.

” I. **T**Hirtie Prepositions govern an Accusative case viz.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. To the Church. | 12. Towards the people. |
| 2. At the market. | 13. Without the hous. |
| 3. Before death. | 14. Betwixt the cup and the lip. |
| 4. Against two. | 15. Within the hous. |
| 5. Towards thee. | 16. Below all men. |
| 6. On this side Thames. | 17. By the well. |
| 7. On this side the River. | 18. For a reward. |
| 8. About the town. | 19. In his power. |
| 9. About the hill. | 20. Through the plain fields. |
| 10. About two thousand. | 21. Behind the back. |
| 11. Against the prick. | 22. After |

Cum pro quamvis, quandoquidem, & quoniam, regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Cum sis apertus.

Nè, an, num Interrogandi, regunt Indicativum; ut, Superatne?

Dubitandi, Subjunctivum; ut,

Vise num redierit.

Ut, causalis, & pro nè, non, pro quanquam, & utpote Subjunctivum regit; ut,

Ut una esset tecum.

Metuo ut substat.

Ut omnia contingant, quæ volo.

Ut qui toties sefellens.

Ut pro postquam, quemadmodum, sicut, & Interrogativum regit Indicativum; ut,

Ut ab urbe discessi.

Perge facere, ut facis.

Ut est dementia. Ut valet?

Cap. 8.

De Regimine Præpositionum.

Triginta Præpositiones Accusativum regunt; viz.

8. Præpositionum.

1. Ad Ecclesiam.

2. Apud forum.

3. Ante obitum.

4. Adversos duos.

5. Adversum te.

6. Cis Tamesin.

7. Citra fluvium.

8. Circa oppidum.

9. Circum montem.

10. Circiter duo millia.

11. Contra Simulium.

12. Erga populum.

13. Extra ades.

14. Inter ca'icem & labrum.

15. Intra domum.

16. Infra omnes.

17. Juxta fontem.

18. Ob premium.

19. Penès illum.

20. Per campos.

21. Ponè tergum.

S

22. Post

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 22. After death. | 27. Above his capacitie. |
| 23. Besides the cottage. | 28. Beyond the Alps. |
| 24. For my Neighbor. | 29. Towards London. |
| 25. According to Aristotle. | 30. Beyond the Indians. |
| 26. By the water courses. | |

II. And twelv govern an Ablative case ;

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. From God. | 7. Concerning trifles. |
| 2. From an enemie. | 8. Out of a well. |
| 3. Of any bodie. | 9. From an high rock. |
| 4. Without monie. | 10. Before all things. |
| 5. Before the master. | 11. Without bread. |
| 6. With las. | 12. For the poor. |

III. Five govern an Accusative and an Ablative case.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Privie to his father. | 3. { A little before night.
In the night. |
| 2 { Into the hous. | |
| 2 { In the hous. | |
| | 4. Upon a stone. |
| | 5. Under the earth. |

To which you may add tenks, up to, as,

Up to the privie parts.

Up to the breast. Up to the ears.

1. Obs. A Preposition is often understood as,
I expect to daie, or at the furthest (to) morrow.
Hee appeared (in) the shape of a man.

2. Obs. And oftimes it is more then needs; as, Abstain
from vices. I will call my friend to this matter.

3. Obs. A Preposition in composition doth sometimes govern the same case, which it governed being without composition, as,

I pass by thee unsaluted. I leav my office.

4. Obs.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 22 Post mortem. | 27 Supra captum. |
| 23 Prater casam. | 28 Trans Alpes. |
| 24 Propter vicinum. | 29 Londinum versus. |
| 25 Secundum Aristotelem. | 30 Ultra Indos. |
| 26 Secus decursus aquarum. | |

„ Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum, viz.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 A Deo. | 7 De nugis. |
| 2 Ab inimico. | 8 E fonte. |
| 3 Abs quovis. | 9 Ex aliâ rupe. |
| 4 Absque pecuniâ. | 10 Pra omnibus. |
| 5. Coram praeceptore. | 11 Sine pane. |
| 6 Cum damno. | 12 Pro pauperibus. |

„ III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Clam { patrem,
{ patre. | 4 Super { lapidem,
{ lapide. |
| 2 In { stallum.
{ stallis. | 5 Subter { terram,
{ terra. |
| 3 Sub { noctem,
{ nocte. | |

Quibus addas Tenus ; ut,
Pube tenus. Pectoribus tenus.
Aurium tenus.

1 Obs. Præpositio sæpe subauditur ; ut,
Exspecto hodie, aut * summum cras. * Ad.
Apparuit † humanâ specie. † Sub.

2 Obs. Sæpe verò redundat ; ut, Abstine à vitiis.
Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem.

3 Obs. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem & extra compositionem regebat ; ut,

Prætereo te infalutatum. Decedo magistratu.

S 2

4 Obs.

4. *Obs.* These seem to bee singular expressions, as,
To go out of the doors.
To prevent the windes in running.

Chap. 9.

Of the government of Interjections.

9. Interjections.

- “**C**ertain Interjections govern cases, viz:
 1. *O* of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accusative, and vocative; as,
O gladforn daie! *O happie husbandmen!* *O prettie boie!*
 But of calling, a Vocative only as,
Com hither ô Galatée!
 2. *Heu*, and *ohé*, a Vocative; as, *O Syrus!*
Ho little booke!
 3. *Pro* and *proh*, *ah* and *vah*, an Accusative and Vocative; as, *O the faith of God and man!*
O holy Jupiter! *Ah mee poor man!* *Ah the inconstancie!* *Alas unhappie maid!* *Oh you villain!*
 4. *Heu*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative; as,
Alas the godlinefs. *O the hated stock.*
Alas for mee poor man.
 5. *Hem* and *apage* an Accusative; as, *Fie upon craft.*
See Davus for you. *Away with such complements.*
 6. *Hei* and *va* a Dative; as, *Wo is mee.*
Wo bee to thee.
 1. *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case;
 as, *Alas*, I am affraid. What madnes, (*with a mischief?*)
 2. *Obs.* And they are often understood, as;
 (*O*) mee poor wretch. (*O*) the base prank.
I think you wonder, Sirs.

4 *Obs.* Limen exire. Cursu prævertere ventos; &c.
videntur singularia.

Cap. 9.

De Regimine Interjectionum.

Quædam Interjectionum regunt casus; viz.
1. *O* Exclamantis Nominativum, Accusativum, & Vocativum; ut,

9. Interje-
ctionum

O festus dies! O fortunatos agricolas! O formose puer!
Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,
Huc ades Æ Galatæ!

2. *Heus* & *ohe* vocativum; ut,
Heus Syre! Ohe libelle!

3. *Pro* & *proh*, *ah* & *vah*, Accusativum & Vocativum; ut, *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*

Proh sancte Jupiter! Ah me miserum! Vah inconstantiam! Ah virgo infelix! Vah scelus!

4. *Heu* Nominativum, Dativum, & Accusativum, ut,
Heu Pietas.

Heu stirpem invisam. Heu misero mihi.

5. *Hem* & *apage* Accusativum; ut, *Hem astutias.*

Hem Davum tibi. Apage istiusmodi salutem.

6. *Hei* & *va* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*

Va tibi.

1 *Obs.* Interjectiones non raro absolutè & sine casu ponuntur; ut,

Hei vereor. Quæ (malum) dementia?

2 *Obs.* Sæpe etiam subintelliguntur; ut,

Me miserum. Facinus indignum. Credo vos mirari, iudices.

Chap. 10. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures.
1. Of a
Word.

Figure is a kinde of speaking on som new fashion, or the altering of a word or speech from the usual manner of speaking, and that also by autoritie of good writers.

Figure is { 1. Of a Word : } which { Etymologic.
of two } belong's {
sorts, { 2. Of Construction: } to { Syntaxis.

A Figure of a Word is that which anie waie changeth the form of a word, and these bee its chief kindes.

1. *Prosthesis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word ; as *Gnatus* for *natus* , *tetuli* for *tuli*.

2. *Aphæresis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, *Ruit* for *Erui*, *temnere* for *contemnere*.

3. *Epenthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable into the middle of a word ; as, *Relligio* for *religio*, *Induperator* for *Imperator*.

4. *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the middle of a word ; as, *Abiit* for *abivit* , *dixisti* for *dixisti*.

5. *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *Dicter* for *dici* , *emori* for *e-mori*.

6. *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from the end of a word ; as, *Ingeni* for *ingenii*.

7. *Diaeresis*, is the dividing of one syllable into two ; as, *Aulæi* for *aulæ*, *evoluisse* for *evoluisse*.

8. *Synæresis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two divers syllables ; as, *Thesæi* for *Thesæi*. *vemens* for *vehemens*.

9. *Meta-*

Cap. 10.

De Figuris dictionis.

Figura est novarâ arte aliquâ dicendi forma, sive mutatio formæ dictionis aut orationis à communi loquendi consuetudine, idque bonorum scriptorum autoritate.

Est autem *Figura duplex*, *1. Dictionis* : *2. Constructionis*. *quæ* *Etymologica* *Syntaxi* *accidit.*

Figura dictionis, (sive *Etymologica*) est quæ dictionis formam aliquo modo mutat ; ejus hæ sunt præcipuæ species.

1. *Prosthesis*, (sive *adjectio*) est appositio literæ vel syllabæ ad principium dictionis ; ut, *Gnatus* pro *natus*, *teruli* pro *tuli*.

2. *Aphæresis*, (sive *detractio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à principio dictionis ; ut, *Ruit* pro *eruit*, *tenere* pro *contemnere*.

3. *Epenthesis*, (sive *insertio*) est interpositio literæ vel syllabæ in medio dictionis ; ut, *relligio* pro *religio*, *Induperator* pro *Imperator*.

4. *Syncope*, (sive *concisio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à medio dictionis ; ut, *Abiit* pro *abivit*, *dixi* pro *dixisti*.

5. *Paragoge*, (sive *productio*) est appositio literæ vel syllabæ ad finem dictionis ; ut, *Dicier* pro *dici*, *emori* pro *emori*.

6. *Apocope*, (sive *abscissio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à fine dictionis ; ut, *Ingeni* pro *ingenii*.

7. *Diarexis*, (sive *divisio*) est divisio unius syllabæ in duas ; ut, *Aulæi* pro *Aula*, *evoluisse* pro *evoluisse*.

8. *Synæresis*, (sive *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unâ syllabam ; ut, *Thesei* pro *Thesei*, *vemens* pro *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis* is the mis-placing of a letter or syllable; as, *pistris* for *pristis* a long ship.

10. *Antithesis*, or *Antistachon* is the putting of a letter for a letter; as, *Olli* for *illi*.

11. *Imesis*, is the parting of a compound word betwixt the parts whereof another is put; as, *Quæ mihi cunque placent*, What things soever pleas mee.

12. *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech, or their Accidents one for another; as, The people beeing as King. i. e. ruling all abroad. *Agnus trepidare* for *trepidabat*, The Lamb did tremble.

13. *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of speaking, which is now out of use; as, *Valde tonit* for *tonuit*, It thundered exceedingly. *Tam nulli consilii*, So void of counsel. *Operam abuti*, To bestow his labor to a wrong end.

14. *Metaplasmus*, is anie change (at all) in a word; as, *Agrese* for *agresti*.

Chap II.

Of the Figures of Construction.

2. Of Construction.

A Figure of construction is that which anie waie changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kindes are

1. *Apposition*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case; as, *The river Rhine. The citie Athens. M T. C.*

And it is either to

- 1. Restrain generalitie; as, *A living creature, an horse.*
- 2. Take away Equivocation; as, *The dog-star.*
- 3. To attribute a propertie to one; as, *Erasmus a man of most exact judgment.*

2. Syl-

9. *Metathesis*, (five *trajeſtio*) eſt tranſpoſitio literæ vel ſyllabæ; ut, *Piſtri* pro *piſti*.

10. *Antithesis*, five *Antithæſion*, (five *oppoſitio*) eſt poſitio literæ pro litera; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11. *Imeſis*, eſt diſſectio vocis compoſitæ, cuſus partibus alia interponitur; ut, *Quæ mihi cunq̃ue placent*.

12. *Enallage*, (five *Antimeria*) partes Orationis, earumque Accidentia alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populum latè regem*, i. e. *regnantem*. *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13. *Archaiſmus*, eſt vetus & jam obſoletus loquendi mos; ut, *Valdè tonit*, pro *tonuit*. *Tam nulli conſiſt*, pro *nullius conſilii*. *Operam abuti*.

14. *Metaplaſmus*, (five *transformatio*) eſt quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreſte* pro *agreſti*.

Cap. II.

De Figuris Conſtructionis.

Figura Syntaxeos, five Conſtructionis, eſt quæ orationis ſtructuram aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species ſunt,

1. *Conſtr. ditionis*,

1. *Appoſitio*, eſt duorum vel plurium Subſtantivorum ejuſdem caſus conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus, Urbs Athenæ*. *M. T. C.*

Fit autem cauſâ,

- 1. Reſtringendæ generalitatis; ut, *Animal equus*.
- 2. Tollendæ æquivocationis; ut, *Canis aſtrum*.
- 3. Ad Proprietatem attribuendam; ut, *Eraſmus vir exactiſſimo judicio*.

2. *Syl-*

2. *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthie gender or person under the more worthie ; as, *I and my brother are white.* *Mars and Venus, both beeing naked, lie tied fast together in the snares.*

3. *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things ; as,
Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, som in want, som in delights. Bear yee one another's burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.

4. *Zeugma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to divers Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it ; as,

John was a Fisher, and Peter.
The husband and the wife is angrie.

5. *Synthesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sent, though not in words ; as, *Wee are both hurt.*

A brood goos. Two thousand slain.

6. *Antiphrasis*, is the putting one case for another ; as,
All kinde of elegancie. Are yee autors of it.

7. *Synecdoche*, is when that which belong's to a part is spoken of the whole ; as,

A Blackmoor having white teeth. Wounded in the forehead. Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.

8. *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a Speech ; as,
I (thought) presently with my self. I remember that I saw.

9. *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a Speech beyond anie necessitie of it ; as,

I saw it with these eies. I slaughtered him with his own sword.

10. *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in a Speech ; as, *It shall bee don will thou, nill thou.*

Eat, drink, plaie.

11. *Polyasyndeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a Speech ; as,

Sleep,

2. *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore; ut,

Ego & frater sumus candidi.

Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterque jacet.

3. *Prolepsis*, est pronuntiatum quædam rerum summaria; ut, *Dux aquila volaverunt, hæc ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate.*

Curemus æquam uterque partem.

4. *Zeugma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa Supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum verò per supplementum; ut,

Joannes fuit piscator & Petrus.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

5. *Synthesis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce; ut, *Gens armati ruunt. Uterque lesi sumus. Anser sæta.*

Duo millia cæsi.

6. *Antiphrasis*, est positio casus pro casu; ut, *Omne genus elegantia, i. e. omni generis. Idne estis autores, i. e. ejus.*

7. *Synecdoche* est, cum id quod partis est, attribuitur toti; ut, *Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem, vel fronte. Flores, inscripti nomina regum.*

8. *Elleipsis*, est defectio vocis in Oratione; ut, *Memini * videre, i. e. * me.*

*Ego continuo * mecum, i. e. * cogitabam.*

9. *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in Oratione supra necessitatem; ut,

Vidi his oculis.

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

10. *Asyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione defectus; ut, *Velis, nolis, fiet.*

Ede, bibe, lude.

11. *Polyasyndeton* est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia; ut,

Somnus,

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken men's bodies and mindes.

12. *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case; as,

The command is *in thy power*.

13. *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

For ¹it is ²bad ³for ⁴such ⁵as have ⁶blear'd-eyes and ⁷raw stomachs to plaie at ball.

14. *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise;
as,

To commit the South-windes to the ships.

15. *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight against two.

Thereft which belong rather to the handsomg then the making of a Speech, are to bee fought for among the Rhetoricians.

LIB.

Somnus, & vinum, & epulæ, & scorta, & bal-
neæ corpora atque animos enervant.

12. *Anastrophe*, est cùm Præpositio suo casu post-
ponitur; ut,

Te penès imperium.

13. *Synchysis*, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut,

¹ Namque ⁷ pilâ ³ lippis ² inimicum ⁴ & ⁶ ludere ⁵ crudix.

14. *Hypallage*, est mutua casuum permutatio;
ut,

Dare classibus Austros.

15. *Hellenismus*, sive *Gracismus* est recessus à Lati-
nâ consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,

Noli pugnare duobus, i. e. contra duos.

Cæteræ quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quàm
structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquiren-
dæ sunt.

LIB.

LIB. IV.

OF PROSODIE.

IV.
Prosodie,

PROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar, which teacheth the right pronuntiacion of words. A right pronuntiacion is that which observeth in everie word, the Spirit, Tone, and Time of the Syllables.

treateth of

Prosodia there-
fore treateth

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|----------|
| { | 1. Of the Spirits. | } | Chap. 1. |
| | 2. Of the Tones or Accents. | | |
| | 3. Of the Time or Quantitie of Syllables, Chap. 2. 3. | | |

Chap. 1.

Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1. Spirits.

1. **A** Spirit is the manner of uttering a syllable with a breath.

And it is {
 Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, *Harnus, homo.*
 Gentle, or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, *Amo, omnis.*

2. Tones.

2. A Tone, or Accent is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Probitatem, vituperare.*

There be
three
sorts of
Accents,

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | 1. An Acute, which sharpneth or listeth up a syllable, and is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand ('). |
| | 2. A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, and is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (`). |

A Cir-

LIB. IV.

DE PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices quæ
reſtam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

Reſta pronuntiatio eſt, quæ obſervat in unaquâque
voce Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.

IV.
Prosodia.

Dicendum { 1. Spiritibus, &
ergò in { 2. Tono, five Accentibus. } Cap. 1.
Prosodiâ de { 3. Tempore, five Quantitate Syllaba-
rum, Cap. 2. 3.

agitur de

Cap. I.

De Spiritibus & Tonis, five Accentibus.

1. **S**piritus eſt ratio proferendi ſyllabam cum ſpiri-
tu, eſtque, 1. Spiritibus.

Vel { *Aſper*, quo aſperè proferitur ſyllaba; ut, *Ha-*
mus, homo.
Lenis, quo ſyllaba leniter proferitur; ut,
Amo, omnis.

2. **Tonus**, five **Accentus** eſt ratio pronuntiandi ſyl-
labam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, *Pro-* 2. Tonis.
bitatem, vituperare.

Eſt autem { 1. **Acutus**, qui ſyllabam acuit, five at-
Accentus rollit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in
triplex, { dextram aſcendente (').
2. **Gravis**, qui ſyllabam gravat five de-
primit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in
dextram deſcendente (`).

3. **Cir-**

The Latine Grammar.

3. A *Circumflect*, which uttereth a syllable with a longer staie, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an acute and grave (^).

There bee three *Rules of Tones or Accents*.

1. A word of one syllable, beeing short or long by Position, hath an Acute Accent; as, *Mél, párs*, but if it bee long by Nature, it is Circumflected; as, *Spēs, flōs*.

2. In a word of two syllables, if the first bee long by Nature, and the later short, the first is Circumflected; as, *Lūna, mūsa*; but otherwise it hath an Acute; as, *Bōnus, Dēus, sōlers*.

3. A word of manie syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth, it hath an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Libértas*; but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a Circumflect in the last syllable save one; as, *Amāre, Romānus*.

But if it have the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an acute accent; as, *Dōminus, Pōntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of manie syllables, have grave accents (though not marked) as, *Celebérrimus*.

1 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Facio* have an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefácis, malefácis*,

2 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fis, fit*, have an acute in the last syllable; as, *Cálesit, benefít*.

3 *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a Circumflect with an acute, becaus it is scarce differenced from it in pronuntiation.

There bee five things which alter the rules of the Accents.

3. *Circumflexus*, qui syllabam longiori morâ effert, pariter attollens cum acuto, & deprimens cum gravi, & signatur notâ ex acuto & gravi conflata (^).

Tonorum regula sunt tres.

1. Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Positione longa, acuitur; ut, *Mél, pars*; at Naturâ longa Circumflectitur; ut, *Spês, flôs*.

2. In Dissyllabâ dictione, si prior longa fuerit naturâ, & posterior brevis, prior Circumflectitur; ut, *Lûna, mûsa*; in cæteris verò acuitur; ut, *Bônus, Déus, sôlers*.

3. Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam habet, sequente longâ, penultimam acuit; ut, *Libértas*; sequente verò brevi, circumflectit penultimam; ut, *Amâre. Românus*.

Sin brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenultimam; ut, *Dôminus, Póntifex*.

Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, etsi non notentur; ut, *Celeberrimus*.

1 *Obs.* Composita à *Fácio* penultimam acunt; ut, *Benefáciis, malefáciis*.

2 *Obs.* Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam acunt; ut, *Calescit, malefit*.

3. *Obs.* Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto sæpe confundunt, quòd ab eo vix prolatione discernitur.

Quinque sunt quæ *Tonorum regulas perturbant*, five *Tonos mutant*.

T

I. Dis-

I. Difference, for which sake

1. Some words are Circumflexed in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musâ*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergô* for *caussâ* differ's from *ergô* the Conjunction.

2. Some have an acute accent in the last syllable, as *manê* Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; viz. *Unâ, aliquâ, putâ, ponê, &c.* which in the end of a sentence have an acute accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a grave accent.

3. Some have an acute in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Déinde, deorsum, quînîmo, înterea loci, nihilôminus, quâtenus &c.* when they are not several words; as are *Interea loci, nihilo minus, pûbê ténus, &c.*

N. B. An accent is now seldom marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not onely in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one, and in that which is before the last save one; as, *occido, occîdo.*

II. Transposition, or mis-placing words. For when Prepositions bee set after their cases, they have a grave accent, as, *Transstrâpêr & remos. Te penês imperium.*

III. Attraction, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the accent of the Inclivative Conjunction; as, *Luminâque taurâsqûe Dei.*

But when there is an apparent Composition, the accent is not altered; as, *itaque, îndique, hîccine.*

IV. Concision, when words are cut off by Syncope, or Apocope, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Virgili* for *Virgîlî*, *Arpinâs* for *Arpinâtis*. So also *hûc, illûc*, for *hûcce, illûcce*, and the Compounds of *dic, duc, fac*, as, *benedic, reduc, benefac.*

V. The

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1. Quædam dictiones Circumflectuntur in ultima; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musâ*, quo differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musa*,. Sic ergò pro causâ differt ab ergò Conjunctione.

2. Quædam acuiuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz. *Undâ, ali-quò, putâ, penè*, &c. quæ in fine sententiarum acuiuntur, in consequentia verò gravantur.

3. Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut, *Dèinde, dêorsum, quinimo, intereâloci, nihilôminus, quâ-tenus*, &c. cum non sunt orationes diversæ; ut sunt, *Interea loci, nihilo minus, pûbe ténus*, &c.

N. B. Accentûs nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentie causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultima, & antepenultimâ; ut, *occido, occîdo*.

II. *Transpositio*, Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transstraper & remos. Te penès imperium*.

III. *Attractio*, cum scil. ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis, attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque laurîsque Dei*.

1 Obs. ubi verò manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *ita jae, undique, hiccine*.

IV. *Concisio*, cum dictiones per Syncope aut Apocopen castrantur, tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgili pro Virgiliî, Arpinâs pro Arpinâris*. Sic *hûc, illûc*, pro *hûcce, illûcce*; & Composita à *Dic, duc, fac*; ut, *Benedic, reduc, benefac*.

V. *The Idiome*, or the proprietic of the language: For Greek words, if they com whole to the Latines, (i. e. if they bee expreſſed with the very ſame letters) they keep their own accent; as, *Metamórphoſis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they becom altogether Latine, they keep the Latine accent; as, *Geórgica*, *Philofóphia*, *Idólum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a ſtrange word bee unknown, it will bee moſt ſafe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2. Thoſe ſyllables which are common are pronounced ſhort in Proſe, i. e. where a mute and a liquid do follow a ſhort vowel; as, *Célebris*, *Cáthedra*; otherwiſe they are pronounced long; as, *Unius*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3. An Interrogation doth alter the accent; as, *Siccine ais Parmenó?*

Chap. 2. Of the Quantitie of the Firſt and Middle Syllables.

3. Time or quantitie:

Time or *Quantitie* is the meaſure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the ſpace of tuning a Vowel, whereby wee meaſure how long it is in pronouncing.

According to
time or quan-
tie, a ſyllable is
ſaid to bee

Short, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced; as, *píus*, whoſe time is thus marked (˘).
Long, which hath two times, or which hath the ſpace of two ſhort times; as, *Aūdīre*, whoſe long time is thus marked (-).

Accor-

V. *Idioma*, five lingua proprietas. Dictiones enim Græcæ si integræ ad Latinos veniant, (i. e. si iisdem planè literis proferantur) servant tonum suum; ut, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

Sin prorsus Latinæ fiunt, Latinum quoque tonum servant; ut, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. 1. Si ignoretur proprius peregrinæ vocis tonus, tutissimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enunniare.

2. Syllabæ communes (i. e. ubi muta cum liquida sequitur vocalem brevem) in prosa oratione corripuntur; *Celebris*, *Cathedra*; in aliis verò dictionibus producuntur; ut, *Unius*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3. Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Siccine ais Parmenó?*

Cap. 2. De Tempore, five Quantitate Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum.

Tempus five *Quantitas* est syllabæ pronuntiandæ mensura, five spatium modulandæ vocalis, quo scil. moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur. 3. De tempore five quantitate

Secundùm
tempus, five
quantitatem
Syllaba dici-
tur

{ Brevis, quæ unum habet tempus, five quæ celeriter pronuntiatur; ut, *Lègèrè*, cujus tempus breve sic notatur (').
{ Longa, quæ duo tempora habet, five quæ spatium duarum brevium exigit; ut, *Aūdīre*, cujus tempus longum sic notatur (-).

According to the order wch they have in words, Syllables are nam'd

<p>First,</p> <p>Middle,</p> <p>Last,</p>	<p>which</p> <p>have</p> <p>the</p>	<p>first</p> <p>middle</p> <p>last</p>	<p>place</p> <p>in a</p> <p>word.</p>

Of the first.

The quantitie of the first syllables is known eight manner of waies :

by	I. Position.
	II. A Vowel before a vowel.
	III. A Diphthong.
	IV. Derivation.
	V. Composition.
	VI. Preposition.
	VII. Rule.
	VIII. Example, or Autoritie.

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular waie of beeing known, which you may see IX

I. According to Position,

1. A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long ; as, *Vēnus*, *āxis*, *patrīxo*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make i short ; as, *Bijugus*.

2. And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall bee long ; as, *Majōr sum quā cui pōssūt fortuna nocere*.

3. A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldom is made long ; as, *Oculū spolia*, & *plures de pace triumphos*.

4. A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, i. e. long or short ; as, *Et primō volūcri similis, mox verā volūcris*.

But a long vowel is not changed ; as, *Arātrum*, *Simulācrum*.

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short ; as, *Dēm. nīhil*.

But

Secundam or-	{	Prime,	{	primum	{	locum in
dinem suum		Media,		medium		diſtione
quem habent		Ultima,		ultimum		quavis
in diſtione			quæ			occu-
ſyl ^{la} dicatur						pant.

Primarum ſyllaba- rum quantitas o- cto modis cogno- ſcuntur, viz.	{	I. Poſitione.
		II. Vocali ante vocalem.
		III. Diphthingo.
		IV. Derivatione.
		V. Compoſitione.
		VI. Prepoſitione.
		VII. Regulâ.
		VIII. Exemplo ſeu Autoritate.

Primarum.

Mediarum verò peculiaris eſt cognoscendi mo-
dus quem videre licet IX.

I. Juxta Poſitionem.

1. Vocalis ante duas conſonantes, aut duplicem in
eadem diſtione longa eſt; ut, *Ventus, âxis, patri-*
zo. Sed Compoſita à jugum corripunt; ut, *Biju-*
gum.

2. Quòd ſi conſonans priorem diſtioneſ
claudat, ſequente item à conſonante inchoante,
vocalis præcedens longa erit; ut,

Majôr ſum quàm cui poſſit fortuna nocere.

3. Vocalis brevis in fine diſtioneſ, ſequente à du-
abus conſonantibus inchoante, interdum, ſed rariùs
producitur; ut,

Occultâ ſpolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4. Vocalis brevis ante mutam ſequente liquida,
communis redditur; ut,

Et primò volũcri ſimilis, mox vera volũcris.

Longa verò vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Arâtrum,*
ſimulâcrum.

II. Vocalis ante alteram in eadem diſtione brevis
eſt; ut, *Dẽm, nihìl*.

But 1. Genitive cases in *im*, make the last syllable save one common; as, *Unim*, *illim*. Except that *i* in *alterim* is alwaies short, and in *alim* alwaies long.

2. In the fifth Declension *e* betwixt a double *i* is long; as, *Faciei*.

3. *Fi* in *Fio* is everie where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. *Ohe* hath the first syllable doubtful; *ēheu* alwaies long.

5. A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Pierides*; and in Possessives; as, *Ænēia nutrix*.

But the quantitie of Greek syllables is better to bee found from the Greeks.

6. In forrain words the quantitie is doubtful; as, *Michaël*, *Abraham*.

III. Everie Diphthong is long; as, *Aŕum*, *Musā*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Cōgo*, *nīl*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit æstatem*; and but seldom long; as, *Domino præiret Arion*. *a* in *Maotis* is doubtful.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantitie that their Primitives have; as, *ā* *mator* of *ā* *mo*. Yet there bee excepted,

1. Som which are long, and are derived from them that bee short, viz.

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} of {	<i>Vōco.</i>	} of {	<i>ſucundus,</i>	} of {	<i>ſūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>		<i>Vōmer,</i>		<i>Vōmo:</i>
<i>Rex, rēgis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>		<i>Lāterna,</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes.</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>		<i>Tēgula,</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Junior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis.</i>		<i>Mācero,</i>		<i>Mācer.</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo.</i>		<i>Pēnuria,</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

2. Som

Sed 1. Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *Unius, illius*, licet *i* in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. In quinta declinatione *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3. *Fi* in *Fio* ubique longa est, nisi sequatur *e* & *r* simul; ut,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. *Obe* primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *ē*heu semper longam.

5. Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pierides*; & in Possessivis; ut, *Ænēia nutrix*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6. In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Omnis Diphthongus longa est; ut, *Autum, Musa*. Syllabæ item Contractæ; ut, *Cōgo, nīl*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Ver præit æstatem*; rariùs producitur; ut, *Domino præiret Arion*. *a* in *Maotis* est anceps.

IV. Derivata eandem cum Primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur; ut, *amator* primâ brevi ab *amō*. Excipiuntur tamen quædam,

1. Deducta à brevibus, quæ producuntur, viz.

Vox, vōcis,	} à {	Vōco.	} à {	Fūcundus,	} à {	Fūvo.
Lex, lēgis,		Lēgo.		Vōmer,		Vōmo.
Rex, rēgis,		Rēgo.		Lāterna,		Lāteo.
Sēdes,		Sēdeo.		Tēgula,		Tēgo.
Fūnior,		Fūvenis.		Mācero,		Mācer.
Hūmanus,		Hōmo.		Pēnuria,		Pēnus.

2. Som that are short, and are derived of them that are long, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} of	Dūco.	Frāgor,	} of	Frāngo.
Dicax,		Dico.	Frāgilis		
Fides,		Fio.	Nōto, tas,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista,		āreo.	Nōto, tas		Nāru.
Pōfui,		Pōno.	Dīferuus,		Dīffero.
Gēnuī,		Gigno.	Sōpor,		Sōpio.

And som others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantitie of the Simple; as, Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

1. Except	Innūba,	} of Nūbo.	Cognitum,	} of Nōtum.
	Pronūba.		Agnitum,	
	Dejēro,	} of jūro.	Resistūrus,	} of Stāturus.
	Pejēro,		Persistūrus,	

2. Also the Compounds of Dīco, that end in dīcus; as, Maledīcus.

3. Ambītus the Noun hath *i* short, Ambītus the Participle hath *i* long.

4. Idem in the Masculine gender hath *i* long, in the Neuter *i* short.

5. In words that are Compounded

1. With Verbs, the former part ending in *e* is short; as, Valedico.

2. With Particles, *bi*, *tri*, *tre*, *du*, the same are short; as, Biceps, triceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3. With Nouns, the former part ending in *i*, *y*, *u*, is short, as, Tardigrādus, Polydorus, cornūpetā. Except quivis and som others.

6. These words make long the last syllable of their simples, which is common, viz. ubiq̄ue, ubīlibet, ibīdem, quandōq; quandōcunque, but do in quandōquidem is short.

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1. A, de, ē, se, prae, and those that end in (*a*) are long, except a vowel follow; as, Unda dēbiscens.

2. Pro the Latine syllable is long, except in these words

2. Deducta à longis quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} à	Dūco.	} à	Frāgor,	} à	Frāngo.
Dīcax,		Dīco.		Frāgilis,		
Fīdes,		Fīo.		Nōto, as,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista,		āreo.		Nāto, as,		Nātu.
Pōsui,		Pōno.		Dīsertus,		Dīffero.
Genui,		Gīgno.		Sōpor,		Sāpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. Composita simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut, Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

1. Exci- piuntur tamen	} à	Innūba,	} à	Nūbo.	} à	Cognitum.	} à	Nōtum.
		Pronūba,				Agnitum.		
		Dejēro,				Perstiturus		à Stātū-
		Pēiēro,				Restiturus.		rus.

2. Item Composita à Dīco in dīcus; ut, Ma'c-dīcus.

3. Ambītus Nomen corripitur, ambītus Participium producitur.

4. Idem Masculinum producit i, Neutrum verò corripit.

5. In Compositis.

1. Cum Verbis, prior pars vocis in e desinens corripitur; ut, Valēdico.

2. Cum particulis, bi, tri, tre, du, eadem corripuntur; ut, Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3. Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in i, y, u, corripitur; ut, Tardigradus, Polydorus, cornūpeta, excipe quīvis & pauca alia.

6. Hæ voces ultimam syllabam simplicium, quæ communis est, producant, viz. Ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quādoque, quādcūque, sed do in quādoquidem corripitur.

VI. Ex Præpositiōnibus.

1. A, de, è, se, præ, & quæ in a desinunt, ubique producantur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, Unda dehiscens.

2. Pro Latīna longa est, præterquam in istis,
Pro-

words, *Pröcella*, *pröfugus*, *prötervus*, *prönepos*, *pröceptis*, *pröfanus*, *pröfiteor*, *pröfundus*, *pröficifcor*, *pröfari*, *pröparo*, *pröfugio*, *pröfecto*, *pröpello*, *pröpulfo*. But

1. { *Propago*, *gas*,
and
Propago, *gñis*, } have *pro* doubtful.

2. *Pro* the Greek syllable is short ; as, *Pröpheta*, *prölogus*, *Prömetheus*, &c. but in *propino* it is doubtful.

3. *Di* is long except in *Därimo*, and *difertus*.

4. The rest of the Prepositions bee short, if position do not hinder, for *re* in *refert* it is good, cometh of *res*, and is therefore long.

VII. There bee } 1. Of Preterperfect tenses and
two Rules, } Supines of two syllables.
2. Of Preterperfect tenses that
double the first syllable.

1. Every preterperfect tens & supine of two syllables hath the first syllable long, as, *Légi*, *ēmi*, *mōtum*, *lātum*.

Except

1. Six preterperfect tenses; *Fīdi*, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*, *tūli*, *flēti*.

2. Nine supines; *Dātum*, *sātum*, *cītum*, (of *cico*) *ītum*, *litum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rātum*, *rītum*.

2. Preterperfect tenses that double the first syllable of their Present tens, have their first syllable short ; as, *Pēpendi*, *mōmordi*, *spōspondi*.

VIII. The quantitie of such syllables as com not under the rules aforegoing is to bee known by the *Example* and *Autoritie* of Poets ; and this is the most certain and most general waie,

1. Becaus everie rule resteth upon the autoritie of the Antient.

2. Becaus the quantitie of manie syllables is not known but by examples.

1. These words have their first syllable common,
viz.

Pröcella, pröfugus, prötervus, prönepos, pröneptis, pröfanus, pröfiteor, pröfundus, pröfiscor, pröfari, pröparo, pröfugio, pröfeto, pröpello, pröpulso. Sed

1. { *Propago, gas,*
 &
 Propago, gñis, } *pro* habent ancipitem.

2. *Pro Græca* corripitur ; ut, *Pröpheta, prölogus, Prömetheus, &c.* Sed in *propino* anceps est.

3. *Di* producitur, nisi in *dñrimo, & dñsertus.*

4. Reliquæ *Præpositiones*, si positio finat, corripuntur ; nam *re* in *refert pro utile est*, à nomine *res* est, ideoque producitur.

VII. *Regula* { 1. De *Præteritis & Supinis* dissyllabis.
est duplex } 2. De primam *Præteriti* geminantibus.

1. Omne *Præteritum & Supinum* dissyllabum priorem habet longam ; ut, *Lēgi, ēmi, mōrum, lātum.*

Excipiuntur tamen,

1. Sex *Præterita*, *Fīdi, bībi, dēdi, scīdi, tūli, steri.*

2. Novem supina, *Dātum, sātum, cītum (à cieo) itum, litum, quītum, sītum, rātum, rūtum.*

2. Primam *Præteriti* geminantia, primam itidem brevem habent ; ut, *Pēpendi, mōmordi, spōspondi.*

VIII. Quarum syllabarum quantitas sub prædictas rationes non cadit, à Poëtarum usu *Exemplo* atque *Autoritate* petenda est ; atque hæc ratio est omnium certissima & generalissima,

1. Quia regula omnis autoritate veterum nittitur.

2. Quia multarum syllabarum modulus non nisi exemplo cognoscitur.

1. Hæc primam syllabam habent communem ;
vix.

viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cofyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Himulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rud-, Sychaus, &c.*

2. And these their middle; *Batavus, connubium, ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same waie that the first, and partly 1. by the increase of the Genitive case, and 2. the Analogie of the Conjugation.

1. The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, then it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing

1. Sharp, is long.

2. Flat, is short.

2. The Analogie of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this

a	the character or note of the	First	Conjugation is	long.
e		Second		long.
e		Third		short.
i		Fourth		long.

But in *Do* and its Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation, *a* is short; as in *dāmus circundāmus, dābis circundābis, dāre circundāre.*

The Syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tens of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tens; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (*i*) long; as, *Clandestinus, mediastinus.* Except these following, *Diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, Oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus,* and others that signifie matter, or that are made of the mines of metals, and end in *inus*; as, *Chrystallinus, myrrhinus, &c.* which are derived of Greek Nouns.

Chap.

viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sychaus, Sycanius, cum quibusdam aliis.*

3. Hæc verò mediam; *Batavus, connubium, Ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

IX. *Mediæ syllabæ* partim eadem ratione quâ primæ, partim etiam 1. ex incrementis Genitivi, atque 2. Conjugationis Analogiâ cognosci possunt. *Mediæ.*

1. Incrementum Genitivi est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc, penultima Nominum crescentium

1. Acutè, longa est.

2. Graviter, brevis est.

2. Analogia Conjugationis est quando verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hanc,

a e e i	}	index	{	Primæ Secundæ Tertiæ Quartæ	}	Conjugationis	{	longa longa brevis longa	}	est.
------------------	---	-------	---	--------------------------------------	---	---------------	---	-----------------------------------	---	------

Sed in *Do* & ejus *Compositis*, quando primæ sunt Conjugationis, *a* brevis est; ut, *Dāmus, circundāmus, dābis circundābis, dāre circundāre.*

Syllaba *rimus* & *ritis* in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sunt breves; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Adjectiva in *inus* Latina penultimam producunt; ut, *Clandestinus, mediastinus, &c.* Præter hæc sequentia, *diutinus, crassinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, oleaginus, saginus, cedrinus, carbasinus, &c.* reliqua materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in *inus*; ut, *Chrysellinus myrrhinus, &c.* à Græcis deducta.

Chap. 3.

Of the quantitie of the last syllables.

And last
Syllables.

The last Syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end, thus,

A are long ; as, *Amā, contrā, etgā.*

Except,

1. *Putā, itā, quā, ejā.*

2. Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as* ; as, *Æneā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension ; as, *Musā.*

3. Numerals in *ginta*, which have *a* common ; as, *Triginta, quadraginta.*

B are short ; as, *āb.*

Except,

1. Hebrew words ; as, *Jacōb.*

C are long ; as, *āc, sic, and hic* the Adverb.

Except,

1. *Lāc, nēc, donēc*, which are short,

2. *Fac*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common, as also its Neuter Gender *hoc*, so that it be not of the Ablative case.

D are short ; as, *ād.*

1. Except Hebrew words ; as, *David.*

E are short ; as, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Except,

1. Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e* ; as, *Fidē, diē, rē*, with the Adverbs that com of them ; as, *Hodiē, quarē.*

2. *Fame*, now of the Third Declension, heretofore of the Fifth.

3. The

Words that end in

Cap. 3.

De Ultimarum Syllabarum quantitate.

U *Ultimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem litterarum finalium, sic,* Et ultimarum syllabarum.

A producuntur ; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

Excipe,

1. *Putā, itā, quā, ejā.*

2. Item omnes casus in *a*, præter vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*, ut, *ô Aneā*, & Ablativum primæ declinationis ; ut, *Musā.*

3. Numeralia in *gintā*, quæ *a* habent communem ; ut, *Trigintā, quadragintā.*

B brevia sunt, ut, *āb.*

Excipe,

1. Hebræa ; ut, *Jacōb.*

C producuntur ; ut, *āc, sic, & hic* Adverbium.

Excipe,

1. *Lāc, nēc, donēc*, quæ contrahuntur.

2. *Fac*, & Pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neutrum *hoc* modò non sit Ablativi casus.

D brevia sunt ; ut, *ād.*

1. Excipe Hebræa ; ut, *David.*

E brevia sunt ; ut, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Excipe,

1. Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e* ; ut, *Fidē, diē, rē*, cum Adverbis inde enatis ; ut, *Hodiē, quare.*

2. *Fame*, quæ nunc Tertiæ Inflectionis brevīs, olim quintæ longa fuit.

U

3. Se

Finite in

3. The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation ; as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, and vale* is sometimes short.

4. Monosyllables in *e* ; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except *quē, nē, vē*, the Inclinative Conjunctions.

5. Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives ; as, *Dolē, valdē, and fermē, ferē* : yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6. Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long ; as, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē*.

I are long ; as, *Domini, anavī*.

Except,

1. *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2. *Nisī*, and *quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *as* ; as, *Palladī, Daphnī*.

L are short ; as, *Animāl, mēl*.

Except

1. *Sāl* and *Sōl*.

2. Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel ; as, *Michaēl*.

N are long ; as, *Pæān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1. *Forṣān, forṣitān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn*.

2. Words cut off by an Apocope ; as, *Mēn', vīlén'*.

3. *In* with its Compounds ; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c*.

4. Nouns ending in *en*, whose Genitive case singular hath *inis* short ; as, *Garmēn, pedēn, tibicēn*.

5. Greek

Words that end

3. Secundæ personæ singulares Imperativorum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut, *Docē, movē, manē.*

Sed *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quandoque etiam corripitur.

4. Monosyllaba in *e*; ut, *mē, tē, cē, præter quē, nē, vē, Enclyticas Conjunctiones.*

5. Adverbia in *e*, ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *doctē, valdē, item fermē, & ferē. Benē* tamen & *malē* corripiuntur.

6. Quæ à Græcis per *n* scribuntur; ut, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē.*

I longa sunt; ut, *Domini, amari.*

Excipe

1. *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* pro *ut*, & *cui* dissyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2. *Nisi, & quasi* quæ corripiuntur, ut & Dativi & Vocativi Græcorum quorum Genitivus in *os* breve exit; ut, *Palladi, Daphni.*

L corripiuntur; ut, *Animāl, mēl.*

Excipe

1. *Sāl, & Sōl.*

2. Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per vocalem longam; ut, *Michaēl.*

N producantur; ut *Paān, Hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1. *Forsān, forsitan, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn.*

2. Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mēn', vidēn'.*

3. In cum Compositis; ut, *Exīn, subīn, &c.*

4. Nomina in *en*, quorum Genitivus Inī correctum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pessēn, tibicēn.*

5. Greek Nouns in *on* by little *o* ; as, *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Caucasön*.
6. Greek Nouns in *in*, *yn*, and *an*, whose Nominative case is short ; as, *Alexin*, *Ityn*, *Maiän*.
- O* are common ; as, *Amo*, *porrò*, *docende*.
 Except
1. Oblique cases in *o* which are alwaies made long ; as, *Dominò*, *servò*.
 2. Adverbs derived of Adjectives ; as, *Tantò*, *falsò*, &c. But *Sedulò*, *crebrò*, and *mutuò* are common, rather to bee made long.
 3. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *dò*, *stò*, and *ergò* for *causâ*.
 4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citò*, *modò* with its compounds are seldom read long.
 5. Greek words in *o* are long ; as, *Sappho*, unless they com of Nominative cases in *ov* from which (*n*) is taken away ; as, *Leo*, *Plato*, which for the most part are short.
- R* are short ; as, *Cesâr*, *torcûlâr*, *për*, *diciër*.
 Except
1. *Fâr*, *lâr*, *nâr*, *vër*, *fûr*, *cûr*, and *pâr* with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in *Ovid*.
 2. Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long ; as, *Aër*, *cratër*, except *patër*, *matër*.
- S* have termination answerable to the number of vowels.
- as* are long ; as, *Amäs*, *musäs*.
 Except
1. Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *dos* ; as, *Archäs*, *Palläs*.
 2. The Acusatives plural of Nouns encreasing ; as, *Heroäs*, *Phillidäs*.
- es* are long ; as, *Anchisës*, *sedës*, *docës*.

Except

5. Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Iliōn*, *Peliōn*, *Caucasōn*.

6. Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nominativus est brevis; ut, *Alexīn*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

O Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porrō*, *docendo*.
Excipe,

1. Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur; ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2. Adverbia ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. Sed *sedulō*, *crebrō*, *mutuō*, sunt communia, rutiùs producenda.

3. Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *stō*, item *ergō* pro *causā*.

4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō* cum compositis vix leguntur producta.

5. Græca per *ω* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*, nisi descendant à Nominativis in *ω* quibus *v* adimitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque corripuntur.

R Corripuntur; ut, *Casār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*.
Excipe,

1. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, & *pār*, cum compositis. *Cor* semel apud Ovidium producitur.

2. Græca in *ne* per; ut, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, except *patēr* & *matēr*.

S pares cum numero vocalium terminationes habent.

as producuntur; ut, *Amās*, *musās*.

Except,

1. Græca quorum Genitivus singularis in *dos* exit; ut, *Archās*, *Pallās*.

2. Accusativos plurales nominum crescentium; ut, *Heroās*, *Phyllidās*.

es Longa sunt; ut, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Excipe,

Except

1. Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that encrease short ; as, *Milēs, divēs*. But of these, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, parjēs*, and *pēs*, with its Compounds are long.

2. *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition are short.

3 Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eis* ; as, *Cacoëthēs, Cyclopēs*.

is are short ; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*,

Except

1. Oblique cases plural in *is* ; as *Musīs, dominīs*, and *quēis* for *quibus*.

2. Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing ; as, *Samnūs, vitis*.

3. Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *eu* ; as, *Omnīs, Simois*.

4. All Monosyllables ; as, *Vis, lis*, besides *is, bis*, and *quis*.

5. *Velis* with its Compounds, *malis, nolis*, and *aufis faxis*.

6. The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation ; as, *Audis, dormis*.

7. The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common ; as, *dederis, amaveris*.

os are long ; as *Herōs, bonūs, dominūs*.

Except

1. *Compōs, impōs*, and *ōs offis*.

2. Greek Nouns with little *o* ; as, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us are short ; as, *Famulūs, templūs*.

Except

Excipe

1. Nomina in *es* tertiæ Declinationis graviter crescentia ; ut, *milēs, divēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, paries, & pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum* unà cum Compositis, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs, & penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3. Item Neutra singularia: & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *eis* desinentia ; ut, *Cacoëthēs, Cyclopīs*.

is brevia sunt ; ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristis*.

Excipe

1. Obliquos Plurales in *is*, ut, *Musīs, dominīs, & quēis* pro quibus.

2. Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis ; ut, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3. Quæ fiunt in *is* ab *eis* Diphthongo ; ut, *Omnīs, Simoīs*.

4. Monosyllaba omnia ; ut, *Vīs, līs, præterīs, bīs, & quīs*.

5. *Vellīs*, cum Compositis, *malīs, nolīs*, item *ausīs, faxīs*.

6. Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis ; ut, *Audis, dormis*.

7. Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes ; ut, *dederis, amaveris*.

os producuntur ; ut, *Herōs, honōs, dominōs*.

Excipe

1. *Compōs, impōs, & ōs* offis.

2. Græca per *o* parvum ; ut, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us corripuntur ; ut, *famulūs, tempūs*.

Excipe

Words that end in

Except

1. The Nominative cases of Nouns that increas long ; as, *Virtūs, salūs.*

2. The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension ; as, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, hæ manūs, ô manūs.*

3. Monosyllables in *us* ; as, *pūs, crūs.*

4. Words which are writ in Greek with *us* ; as, *Panthūs, Cliūs.*

And the name *Jesūs* to bee revered of of all good men.

u are long ; as, *Manū, genū.*

y and *ys* are short as, *Moly, Tiphys.*

The last syllable in everie Vers is common, i. e. it may bee either long or short.



Appen-

Excipe,

1. Nominativos acutè crescentium; ut, *Vir-
tūs, salūs*.

2. Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vo-
cativos, & Accusativos plurales Quarta De-
clinationis; ut, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, has
manūs, ô manūs*.

3. Monosyllaba in *us*, ut, *pūs, crūs*.

4. Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *es*; ut,
Panthūs, cliūs.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iēsūs.

u producuntur; ut, *Manū, genū*.

y & *ys* corripuntur; ut, *Moly, Tiphys*.

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur
communis.



Appendix Grammatices.

Appendix
Grammatices,

agit

De Ordine



Agendus de vocum Elementis, Accidentibus, Constructione & Pronuntiatione, quæ quidem, quatuor, quas jam diximus, Partes Grammaticæ, tanquam propriæ & partialia singularum subiecta, constituunt, & ipsam orationem juxta Regulas Grammatices componendam, (tanquam subiectum hujus Artis, ut Logici dicunt, adæquatum, totale & principale) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de Ordine vocum pauca subjiciemus. Nam & hoc etiam ad finem Grammatici aliquo modo conducit, ut quo ordine voces sint collocandæ, ad orationem melius eloquendam, aut scribendam intelligat.

Cap. I.

De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum
sive vocum,

Ordō dictionum est earundem inter se collocatio, ita ut alia necessario præcedat, alia sequatur.

Est autem Ordo tri- plex,	}	1. Gramma- ticus, 2. Oratorius, 3. Poëticus,	}	quem obser- vant	{	Gramma- tici Oratores Poëtæ	}	in Oratione cõponendâ.
---------------------------------	---	---	---	---------------------	---	--------------------------------------	---	---------------------------

I. Gram-
matico.

I. Ordo Grammaticus sive naturalis est quando voces in oratione juxta naturam suam collocantur, nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipuè cognoscitur.

Secundùm hunc ordinem composita oratio *Translatio* dicitur.

In

In *Translatione* verò sic collocentur voces.

1. Vocativus, vocandi particulæ, & quæ ab illis pendent.
 2. Nominativus, & quæ ab eo pendent.
 3. Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, viz.
 1. Infinitum. 2. Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent.
- Hic tamen observandum,
1. Adverbium Verbo subjungitur.
 2. Substantivum & Adjectivum,
- Item Præpositio & suis casus conjungi debent.
3. Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,
- Adverbi a quâdam, & Conjunctiones præcedunt alias voces.
4. Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.
 5. Accusativus ante Verbum Impersonale exponi debet per *quod* vel *ut*.
 6. Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.

Scipio & Læli, artes exercitationesque virtutum sunt omnino arma aptissima senectutis; quæ cultæ afferunt fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris multum diuque non solum quia deferunt nunquam, nè quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id est maximum; verum etiam quia conscientia vitæ actæ bene, recordatioque benefactorum multorum est jucundissima.

Cap. 2. *De Ordine vocum Oratorio.*

Ordo Oratorius est quando voces in oratione juxta 2. Orato-
rio. Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis quidem certis, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem compositæ voces *prosam* five solutam orationem (quam & *καὶ ἐξοχλὴ* Orationem dicimus) constituunt. In

In oratione componendâ.

1. Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in medio, & Verbum in fine collocetur.

2. Adjectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò sequi debet.

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum aliæ voces interseruntur.

4. Adverbia, Præpositionesque cum suo casu venustius ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.

5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen potes.

6. Principium vel exitum carminis nec principium nec exitum prosæ facito.

7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò maxima.

1. Clausula varianda est maximè.

9. Artificium numeri nunquam longiùs senis à fine syllabis observetur.

10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, at ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.

11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.

Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.

Apertissima omnino sunt, Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum ; quæ in omni ætate cultæ, cum multum diùque vixeris, mirificos afferunt fructus ; non solum quia nunquam defuerunt, nè in extremo quidem tempore ætatis quam id maximum est ; verum etiam quia conscientia bene actæ vitæ, multorumque bene factorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N. B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita mordicus tenenda, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione potiora iis apprehendat & in componenda Oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

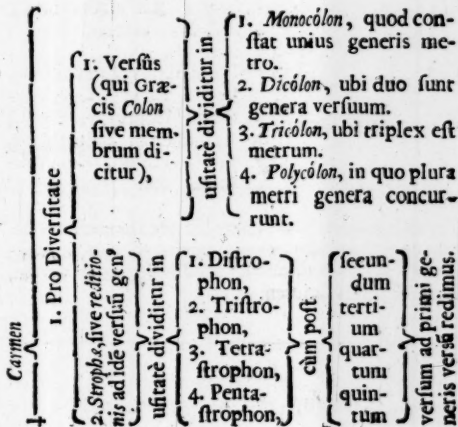
Cap. 3. *De Ordine vocum Poëtico.*

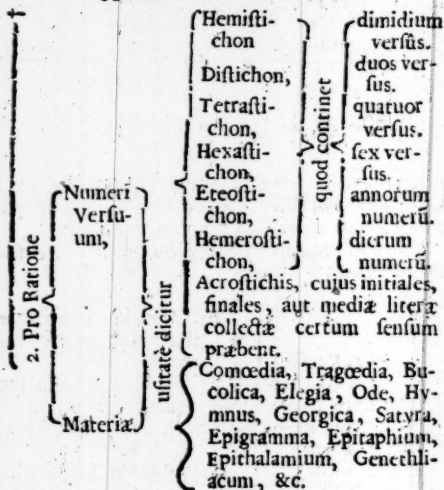
O *Ordo Poëticus* est quando voces in oratione juxta
Artem Poëticam collocantur, observatis qui- 3: Poëtico.
dem & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem conſcripta Oratio *Carmen* ſive *Poëma* dicitur.

3: Poética.

Juxtaquem
Carmen
constitui-
tur.





In quo dig-
noscendi
sunt.

In *Carminibus* verò ritè constituendo summa cura adhibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versuum genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis fiunt Versus, & ex Versibus Carmen.

Cap. 4.

De Pede, & ejus generibus.

Pcs.

PES est duarum syllabarum pluriúmve constitutio, ex certâ temporum sive quantitatum observatione.

Pes

Pes est	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Simplex,} \\ \text{atque is} \\ \text{aut} \\ 2. \text{ Compositus, qui constat ex simplicibus} \\ \text{pedibus conjunctis.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Dissyllabus, qui constat ex} \\ \text{duabus syllabis.} \\ 2. \text{ Trissyllabus, qui constat ex} \\ \text{tribus syllabis.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Simpliciter.} \\ 2. \text{ Compositus.} \end{array} \right.$
Dissyllabi pedes sunt quatuor	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Spondeus,} \\ \text{Pyrrhychius,} \\ \text{Trocheus,} \\ \text{Iambus,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{qui constat ex} \\ \text{duabus longis.} \\ \text{duabus brevibus.} \\ \text{prior longâ, \& posterior brevis.} \\ \text{prior brevis, \& posterior longâ.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{array} \right.$
ut,	a Viriūs. b Dēūs. c ānnūs. d āmāns		
Trissyllabi sunt octo,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Molossus,} \\ \text{Tribrachius,} \\ \text{Dactylus,} \\ \text{Anapaestus,} \\ \text{Bacchius,} \\ \text{Antibacchius,} \\ \text{Amphimacer,} \\ \text{Amphibrachius,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{qui constat ex} \\ \text{tribus longis.} \\ \text{tribus brevibus.} \\ \text{primâ longâ, reliquis duabus brevibus.} \\ \text{primis duabus brevibus, postremâ longâ.} \\ \text{primâ brevi, reliquis duabus longis.} \\ \text{primis duabus longis, postremâ brevi.} \\ \text{primâ longâ, mediâ brevi, ultimâ longâ.} \\ \text{primâ brevi, mediâ longâ, ultimâ brevi.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} e \\ f \\ g \\ h \\ i \\ k \\ l \\ m \end{array} \right.$
ut,	e Magnāres. f Dōminūs. g Scribēre. h piētās. i Hōnēstās. k Audirē. l Chāritās. m Vēniē.		

ut, e Magnāres. f Dōminūs. g Scribēre. h piētās. i Hōnēstās. k Audirē. l Chāritās. m Vēniē. 2. Compositi.

Pedes compositi, potius pedum conjunctiones quàm pedes à quibusdam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittuntur, tanquam non multum ad institutum Grammatici pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabos nihilominus adjecimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus illis quæ ab his nomen acceperunt, viz. Choriambicum, Ionicum, &c.

Pedes

Pedes igitur compositi precipui sunt 18.

Proceleusmaticus,
Dispondeus,
Choriambus,
Antispastus,
Diambus,
Dichoreus,
Ionicus à maiore,
Ionicus à minore,
Epitritus primus,
Epitritus secundus,
Epitritus tertius,
Epitritus quartus,
Pæon primus,
Pæon secundus,
Pæon tertius,
Pæon quartus,

qui constat ex

duobus Pyrrhichiis. a
duobus Spondeis. b
trochæo & Iambo. c
Iambo & Trochæo. d
duobus Iambis. e
duobus Trochæis. f
Spondeo & Pyrrhichio. g
Pyrrhichio & Spondeo. h
Iambo & Spondeo. i
Trochæo & Spondeo. k
Spondeo & Iambo. l
Spondeo & Trochæo. m
Trochæo & Pyrrhichio. n
Iambo & Pyrrhichio. o
Pyrrhichio & Trochæo. p
Pyrrhichio & Iambo. q

ut, a Hominibus. b Concludentes. c Historia. d Alexander. e Severitas. f Comprædare. g Cantabimus. h Venerantes. i Salutantes. k Concitati. l Communicant. m incantare. n conficere. o Resolvere. p Scire. q Celeritas.

Ex pedibus autem Iambus, & Trochæus, Spondeus & Dactylus, Anapestus, & Tribrachus usitatissimi sunt.

Cap. 5.

De Versuum variis generibus.

3 Versus,

Versus est oratio iusto atque legitimo pedum numero constricta.

& eorundem

4. Scansio.

Versum composituro discendum est, pedibus ipsum ritè metiri, (sive in suos pedes distinguere) quam Scansionem sive Dimensionem vocant; ut,

Pærvè nec | invide | o sine | mē liber | ibis in | urbem.
Hæi mihi | quod domi | nō | nōn licet | ire tū | o.

Scan-

Scansioni accidunt hæc Figure.

Cui acci-
dunt,
1. Cæsura.

1. Cæsura, quum ita secatur vox ut posterior ejus pars initium sit pedis sequentis ; ut,

Sic can' | būs carū | lōs simī | lēs sic | mān' | būs | hēdōs.

Species ejus sunt quatuor,

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|---|--|---|
| 1. Triemimeris, | } cum post | { | primum
secundum
tertium
quartum | } pedem relin-
quitur syl-
laba ; ut, |
| 2. Penthemimeris, | | | | |
| 3. Hephthemimeris | | | | |
| 4. Eneemimeris, | | | | |

1 2 3 4
Ille lāt' | ūs nīvē | ūm mōl' | i fūl' | tūs hyā | cīntho.

Ob Cæsuram, syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando extenditur

Post { 1^{um} } Pedem, ut { Pē | tōr' | i | ū | nī | āns spī | rānīā cōnsū | lit | ēxtā,
2^{um} } { Omnīā | vīncit ā | mōr' | & | nōs cēdīm' | ūs ā | mōrī.
3^{um} } { Ostēn | trāns ā | tēm pāri | tēr ā | cūmq' | ō | nāntē.
4^{um} } { Ille lāt' | ūs nīvē | ūm mōl' | i fūl' | tūs hyā | cīntho.

N. B. Invenustus est versus qui Cæsura caret ; ut,

Aurēā | cārminā | I | ū | i | scrībīs | māximē | vāriūm.

Urbēm | fortēm | nūpēr | cepit | fortior | hostis.

2. Synalepha est elisiō quædam vocalis ante alteram in diversis dictionibus ; ut,

Sērā nī | mīs vīl' | est | crās | i | nā | viv' | hōdīlē.

At heu, o, & io nunquam intercipiuntur ; ut,

At bis iō Arē | thū | sā, iō Arē | thū | sā vocāvīt.

Interdum etiam Synalepha negligitur ; ut,

Et sū | dūs pē | tōr' | i | ē | t | lāc sū | b | dūcīt' | ūr | āgnīs.

Tēr sūnt cōnā | tī | im | pōnērē | Pē. iō | offām.

2 Synale-
pha.

Aliquando fit in fine versus ; ut,

Omnīā | Mērcūrī | ō | simīlīs vōl' | cēmīq' | cō. | ōrēn | i | pūē

Et crīnēs flavōs.

3. Ecthipsis est quoties m cum suā vocali perimitur proximā dictione à vocali exorsā ; ut, (est

3. Ecthip-
is.

Mōnstr' | bōr | rēnd' | īn | fōrm' | īn | gēns cū | lūmēn ā | dēm'

Olim elidebatur s ; ut,

Arbōrī | būs vē | rēs dē | cādērē | falcīb' | rāmōs.

X

4. Syna-

4. Synæresis

4. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio ; ut,

*Sēu lēn|tō fūē|rīnt * ā|vāriā | vīmīnē | tēxtā.*

* pro *alvearia*.

Fit autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii, Divi, iidem, iidem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, semiuustus, deest, deero, deerit, anteaambulo, anteit, cui, & Genitivis nominum in eus* ; ut, *Ulissem, Ulissei*, cum multis aliis.

5. Diæresis.

5. *Diæresis*, est ubi ex unâ syllabâ disiectâ fiunt duæ ; ut,

Dēbñērānt fñsōs ēvōlūissēsñōs. pro *evoluisse*.

5. Systole.

6. *Systole* est quæ longam syllabam corripit ; ut,
Mātrī longā dēcēm tñlērunt fāstidiā mēnsēs.

7. Diastole.

7. *Diastole* est quæ brevem syllabam producit ; ut, *In quēm rēcīdimūs quicquid mōrtālē crēāmur.*

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllabâ *Cæsura* frequentius dicitur ; ut,

Omnīā | vīcīt ā|mōr ēt | nōs cē|dāmūs ā|mōrī.

2. Depositi-
tio.

Versuum genera sunt { 1. *Depositionis*,
&
2. *Metri*.
varia pro ratione

1. *Depositiō* est terminatio scanfionis, ex quâ versus abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cognoscimus.

Secundum
quam dici-
tur,

1. Acatale-
cticus.

Secundum hanc versus dicitur,

1. *Acatalecticus*, sive *perfectus*, cui nihil aut superest aut deest ; ut,

Mūsā | Jōvis | sūt filīa.

2. Catale-
cticus.

2. *Catalecticus*, sive *semimutilus*, cui in fine deest syllaba ; ut,

Mūsā | Jōvēm | cānē|bānt.

3. Brachy-
catalecticus.

3. *Brachycatalecticus*, sive *mutilus*, cui in fine pes deest ; ut,

Mūsā | Jōvis | gnata | - - .

4. Hypercatalecticis, five exuberans, In quo una, aut duæ syllabæ supersunt, ut;

Musa | *sorō* | *rēs sūnt Minēr* (væ.

Musa | *sorō* | *rēs Pālādīs* (lugent.

2. Metrum est legitimus pedum numerus, quo ver- sum metimur.

Quoad Metrum versus dicitur.

1. Dimeter,	duobus estque	1. Adonius, five Adonicus, qui constat ex dactylo & spondeo; ut, <i>Gaudia</i> <i>pelle</i> . <i>Pelle</i> <i>mōrē</i> .	4. Hypercatalecticus
2. Trimeter,	tribus, estque	2. Archilochius dactylicus qui constat ex duobus dactylis, & syllabā; ut, <i>Discite</i> <i>iustitiam</i> .	3. Metrum.
qui constat pedibus	quatuor, estque	3. Alcmanius, qui constat ex tribus dactylis & syllabā; ut, <i>Discite</i> <i>iustitiam moniti</i> .	Secundum quod est,
3. Tetrameter	quatuor, estque	4. Glyconicus, qui constat e spondeo & duobus dactylis; ut, <i>Tandem</i> <i>regia</i> <i>nobilis</i> .	1. Adonicus
		5. Pherecratus, qui constat e spondeo, dactylo & spondeo; ut, <i>Nigris</i> <i>aquora</i> <i>venis</i> .	2. Archilochius dactylicus
		Hic versus aliquando pro priori spondeo habet trochæum; ut, <i>Prode</i> <i>as nova</i> <i>nupta</i> . Aliquando Anapestum; ut, <i>Simili</i> <i>iurgit ab</i> <i>ortu</i> .	3. Alcmanius
		6. Eslepiadæus, qui constat ex spondeo, dactylo, & syllabā longā, & duobus deinde dactylis; ut, <i>Macēnas</i> <i>atā</i> <i>vis</i> <i>editē</i> <i>regibus</i> .	4. Glyconicus
		7. Sapphicus, qui constat ex trochæo, spondeo, & duobus demum trochæis, ut, <i>Jam</i> <i>sā</i> <i>us</i> <i>terris</i> <i>novis</i> <i>atque</i> <i>dira</i> .	5. Pherecratus

8. Phalenci-
us.

4. Pentameter,

quinque, estque

Post tres versus Sapphicos, Adoni-
cus addi solet.8. *Phalencius*, qui constat ex Spondæo,
dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis ;
ut,*Quôquô | diffūgī | ās pā | vēns Mā | bili.**Nōstrum non pote | ris la | tere | nasum.*9. Elegia-
cus.

4. Pentameter,

9. *Elegiacus*, qui constat dactylo vel
spondæo, cum syllabâ longâ ; & du-
obus tandem omnino dactylis, cum
syllabâ item longâ ; ut, (amor.)*Rēs est | sōllici | tū | plēnā rī | mōris**Hēimibī | quōd dōmī | nō | nōn | licet | irētūo*10. Heroi-
cus.

qui constat pedibus

10. *Heroicus*, qui constat quatuor pri-
mis locis è spondæo vel dactylo, quin-
to dactylo, & sexto spondæo ; ut,*Tyrī | ē | tū | patī | la | rēcū | bāns sūb | tēgmī-*
(nē | fagi*Sylvē | strēm | tēnū | ī | Mū | sām | mēdī | tārīs*
(ā | vēnā.

5. Hexameter.

sex, estque

Reperitur etiam spondæus aliquando
in quinto loco ; ut,*Chārā | Dē | ūm | sōbō | lēs | mā | gnī | Jōvīs |*
(in | crē | mētūm.Est & Heroicus Tetrameter qui con-
stat ex quatuor postrenis Hexame-
tri pedibus ; ut,*Aut Ephē | sūm | bīmā | rīs | vē | Cō | rīnthī.*11. Iambi-
cus.11. *Iambicus*, qui constat è pedibus
Iambicis ; ut,*Sū | ē | ē | ī | ā | Rō | mā | vī | rībū | rī | ū.*

Est autem hic versus

1. *Purus*, five *Legitimus*, qui constat è solis Iambis ; ut,
Phāse|lūs il|lē, quēm | vīdē|tīs hōs-
(pītēs)
2. *Impurus*, qui aliquot in locis recipit pedem diversum Iambo ; ut,
Jūs ēst | in ār|mīs, op|pūmīt | lēgēs
(rīmōr.
3. *Scæzon*, five *Choliambus*, i. e. claudicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum retinet ; ut,
Nēc fōn|tē tā|brā prō|lūi|Cābāl|līnō.

N. B. Recipit Iambicus interdum (ob maiorem gravitatem exprimendam) in locis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, & quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, spondæum, dactylum, anapæstum ; atque in locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto) quandoque tribrachum, spondæum rariùs, ultimum verò locum rarò mutat ; & saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuò sibi servat.

Hic versus etiam diducitur in duo genera iustatiora

1. *Dimetrum*, five *tetrametrum*, qui constat ex quatuor pedibus quèniq; metimur
Per dipodiam, i. e. geminū pedem more Græco ; ut,
O cā | mīnūm | dūlcēs | nōt.e.
Per monopodiam, i. e. singulos pedes more Latino ; ut,
O cār | mīnūm | dūlcēs | nōt.e.

Archilochi-
us Hepta-
meter.

6. Heptameter,

qui constat pedibus

septem, estq;

vel

2. Trimeterum sive senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quemque metimur,

Per dipodiam; ut,

Quī nōs dāmnānt | sūnt hī strī-
(cīnēs māximī.

Per monopodiam; ut,

Quī nū | dāmnānt | sūnt hī | strī-
(ō | nēs māximī.

12. Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroicis & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,
Sōlvit̃r | ācrīs hylēms grā | tā vīcē | vē-
(rīs | ēt Fāvōnī:

Plura qui quærit, Autores qui de *Arte Poëtica* suis scripserunt, otiosior consulat.

Et discas oportet, Et quod didicisti agendo confirmes,
Sen. Epist.

Doctissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus, quam omnes omnium Grammaticorum Canones. Danesi.

Artifices, solus, qui facit, usus erit. Ovid.

A

The *Latine Grammar* teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright: It is divided into four parts:

I. *Orthographie*, which teacheth how to spell words, *Lib. I.* It treateth —

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------|
| 1. Of Letters, | Chap. 1. |
| 2. Of Syllables. | Chap. 2. |
| 3. Of Right Utterance. | Chap. 3. |
| 4. Of Points in Sentences. | Chap. 4. |

II. *Etymologic*, which treateth of the *Eighe* parts of *Speech*, & their Accidents, Li. II.

1. In general, Chap. 1.

1. Case, Chap. 3.

2. Gender,
Chap. 4. the
Rules to
know which
are ———

1. General, { 1. Of Substantives { 1. Proper, Chap. 5.
 { 2. Commō, Chap. 6.
 { 2. Of Adjectives, Chap. 10.

2. Special,
Of Nouns

not increas-
ing, *Ch. 7.*

Long,
Ch. 8.

Short,
Ch. 9.

3. Declension

the first, Chap. 11.
the second, Chap. 12.
the third, Chap. 13.
the fourth, Chap. 14.
the fifth, Chap. 15.

To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, Chap. 16.

4. Comparison, Chap. 17.

To these be-
long the
Rules of
Heteroclit,
which are

Variant, Chap. 18.
Deficient in — { Case, Chap. 19.
Number, Chap. 20.
Redundant, Chap. 21.

2. its Kindes, Chap. 22.

2. Of a Pronoun, Chap. 23.

3. Of a Verb, and its

Accidents, Chap. 24.

Form of the Conjugation

first. Chap. 27.
second. Chap. 28.
third. Chap. 29.
fourth. [Chap. 30.]
H therto,

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

A	B	Hitherto belong 1. The Rules to know	1. The Preterperfect Tenses 2. The Supines	Of Verbs in O	1. Regular	Simple, chap. 31. Compound, c. 32. Simple, chap. 33. Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>or</i> , c. 34. 2. Irregular, Chap. 35. 3. Defective, Chap. 36.
		2. The Forming the Verb <i>Sum</i> , Chap. 37. 3. Impersonals and Derivatives, Chap. 38.				
		4. Of a Participle, Chap. 39. 5. Of an Adverb, Chap. 40. 6. Of a Conjunction, Chap. 41. 7. Of a Preposition, Chap. 42. 8. Of an Interjection, Chap. 43.				

III. *Syntaxe*, which teacheth the due joyning words together, *Lib. III.* by way of

1. Concordance, Chap. 1. concerning the Rule	1. first 2. second 3. third	Concord. §. 1. §. 2. §. 3. Case of the Relative, §. 4. Question and Answer, §. 5.
1. Of Nouns, Chap. 2. with a	Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	Case. §. 6. §. 7. §. 8. §. 9.
2. Of Pronouns, Chap. 3.		
3. OF Verbs, Chap. 4. with a	Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	Case. §. 10. §. 11. §. 12. §. 13. §. 14.
2. Of Government	Verbs having divers Constructions. §. 15. the Infinitive Mood §. 16. the Gerunds. §. 17. Supines. §. 18. Time. §. 19. Space. §. 20. Place. §. 21. Impersonals, §. 22.	
	To which also belong the Rules of	
A	B	4. Of

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

A

B

4. Of Participles, Chap. 5.

5. Of Adverbs, § Cases. §. 1.
Chap. 6. with Moods, §. 2.

6. Of Conjunctions, § Couple Words. §. 1.
Chap. 7. which } Govern Moods. §. 2.

7. Of Prepositions. Chap. 8.

8. Of Interjections. Chap. 9.

To { Etymologie } belong Figures { Of a Word. Chap. 10.
 { Syntaxis } { Of Construction, Chap. 11.

III. *Proödie*, which } Spirits and Tones. Chap. 1.

teacheth the right
Pronuntiatiön of
Words, Lib. III.
by observing their

Quantitie of
Syllables

{ First & Middle, Chap. 2:
 { Last. Chap. 3.

To Grammar after a man-
ner pertaineth that which
is said concerning the
Order of Words, which is

1. Grammatical, Cap. 1.

2. Rhetorical, Cap. 2.

3. Poetical, Cap. 3. touch-
ing which wee con-
sider the sorts of

{ Feet. Cap. 4.
 { Verses, Cap. 5.



5 JY 62



A TABLE of the Heads of the *Latine Grammar.*

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	pag.
O F Grammar and its Parts. 2		16 Of the Declining of Adjectives. 64	
LIB. I. Of Orthographie. 2		17 Of Comparison. 68	
1 Of Letters. 4		18 Of varying Heteroclitics. 74	
2 Of Syllables. 10		19 Of Heteroclitics that want Case. 78	
3 Of Right Utterance. 12		20 Of Heteroclitics that want Number. 80	
4 Of Points in Sentences. 14		21 Of Redundant Heteroclitics. 86	
LIB. II. Of Etymologie. 17		22 Of the Kindes of Nouns. 90	
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents. 16		23 Of a Pronoun. 95	
2 Of a Noun and its proper Accidents. 20		24 Of a Verb and its Accidents. 106	
3 Of Case. 22		27 Of the form of the first Conjugation. 112	
4 Of Gender. 24		28 Of the form of the second Conjugation. 116	
5 Of the general Rules of Proper Names. 26		29 Of the form of the third Conjugation. 120	
6 Of the general Rules of Common Names. 28		30 Of the form of the fourth Conjugation. 124	
7 Of the first Special Rule. 30		31 Of the Preterperfect tenses of Verbs Simple. 128	
8 Of the second Special Rule. 34		32 Of the Preterperfect tenses of Compound Verbs. 136	
9 Of the third Special Rule. 38		33 Of the Supines of Simple Verbs. 142	
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives. 42		34 Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tenses	
11 Of the first Declension. 46			
12 Of the second Declension. 50			
13 Of the third Declension. 52			
14 Of the fourth Declension. 60			
15 Of the fifth Declension. 62			

A Table, &c.

	Chap.	pag.
<i>tens of Verbs in or,</i>		
35 Of certain Verbs Irregular.	10	262
36 Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.	11	264
37 Of forming the Verb Sum.		160
38 Of Verbs impersonals and Derivatives.		162
39 Of a Participle.		166
40 Of an Adverb.		172
41 Of a Conjunction.		178
42 Of a Preposition.		182
43 Of an Interjection.		184
LIB. III. Of Syntax.		188
1 Of Concordance.		188
2 } Of the Government of { Nouns.		200
3 } { Pronouns.		214
4 } { Verbs.		219
5 } { Participles.		246
6 } { Adverbs.		248
7 } { Conjunctions.		252
8 } { Prepositions.		256
9 } { Interjections.		260
	LIB. IV. Of Prosodic.	270
	1 Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents.	270
	2 Of the Quantitie of the first and middle Syllables.	276
	3 Of the Quantitie of the last Syllables.	188
	Appendix Grammatices.	198
	1 } De Ordine { Grāmatico	298
	2 } Vocum { Oratorio.	299
	3 } { Poëtico.	301
	4 De Pede & ejus generibus.	302
	5 De Versuum variis generibus.	304

2
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

OF THE

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

CHICAGO, ILL.

1900

1901

1902

1903

1904

1905



*Pro Puerorum in Studiis pio progressu,
Precatio quotidiana.*

Domine Pater, Cœli ac Terræ effector, qui liberaliter tribuis sapientiam omnibus eam à te cum fiducia petentibus: Exorna (quæsumus) ingeniorum nostrorum bonitatem, quam cum cæteris naturæ viribus nobis infudisti, lumine divinæ gratiæ tuæ; ut non modò quæ ad cognoscendum te & Salvatorem nostrum Deum num Jesum valeant, intelligamus; sed etiam totâ mente, & voluntate persequamur, & indies benignitate tuâ, tum doctrinâ, tum pietate proficiamus; ut qui efficis omnia in omnibus, in nobis resplendere dona tua facias, ad gloriam sempiternam Majestatis tuæ. *Amen.*

Pater noster, qui es in cœlis, Sanctificetur Nomen tuum: Adveniat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas tua, sicut in cœlo, sic & in terra. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis quotidie. Et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris: Et nè nos inducas in tentationem; Sed libera nos à malo. Quia tuum est Regnum, Potentia, & Gloria, in secula seculorum. *Amen.*



A P R A I E R to bee used everie daie, for
Children's good proceeding at their
B O O K S.

O Almighty Lord and merciful Father, maker of Hea-
ven and Earth, which of thy free liberality givest wise-
dom abundantly to all that with faith and full assurance ask
it of thee : Beautifie by the light of thy heavenly grace
the towardness of our wits, the which with all powers
of nature thou hast powred into us ; that wee may not on-
ly understand those things which may effectually bring us
to the knowledg of thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour,
but also with our whole heart and will constantly follow
the same, and receiue daily encrease thzough thy bountifull
goodness towards us, as well in good life as learning ; so
that thou which workest all things in all creatures, maiest
make thy gracious benefits shine in vs, to the endless glo-
rie and honour of thine immortal Majesty. Amen.

Our Father which art in heaben, Hallowed bee thy
Name ; Thy Kingdom come, Thy will bee done in
Earth as it is in Heaben. Give us this day our daily
bread : And forgive vs our trespasses, as wee forgive them
that trespass against us : And lead vs not into temptation :
But deliver us from evil, for thine is the Kingdom, the
Power, and the Glorie, for ever and ever, Amen.

FINIS.